

# Unit One

## Vocabulary

Read all about it  
قرا كل شيء عنها  
By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

<b>digital</b>	رقمي	<b>summarise</b>	يلخص	<b>upset</b>	مزعج
<b>version</b>	نسخه	<b>guess</b>	يخمن	<b>emotional</b>	عاطفي
<b>print</b>	يطبع	<b>warning</b>	تحذير	<b>effect</b>	تأثير
<b>role</b>	دور	<b>lawyer</b>	محامي	<b>match</b>	يطابق - مباراه
<b>society</b>	مجتمع	<b>claim</b>	يدعي	<b>extreme</b>	شديد
<b>compare</b>	يقارن	<b>type</b>	نوع - يكتب علي	<b>objectives</b>	اهداف
<b>style</b>	اسلوب	<b>Passengers</b>	مسافرين	<b>excitement</b>	دهشه
<b>persuasive</b>	مقنع	<b>copy</b>	نسخه	<b>prove</b>	يثبت
<b>affairs</b>	شئون	<b>occur</b>	يحدث	<b>exist</b>	يوجد
<b>key</b>	مفتاح - رئيسي	<b>rescue</b>	ينقذ	<b>phrase</b>	عباره
<b>points</b>	نقاط	<b>security</b>	امن	<b>verb</b>	فعل
<b>lecture</b>	محاضره	<b>booksellers</b>	بائعي الكتب	<b>mean</b>	يعني - يقصد - بخيل
<b>report</b>	تقرير - يبلغ	<b>highlights</b>	اهم الاحداث - يهتم ب	<b>particular</b>	خاص
<b>event</b>	حدث	<b>piracy</b>	قرصنه	<b>remove</b>	يزيل
<b>Review</b>	مقاله نقديه - مراجعه	<b>pirate</b>	قرصان	<b>Imagine</b>	يتخيل
<b>identify</b>	يتعرف علي	<b>common</b>	عام - شامل	<b>pages</b>	صفحات
<b>bias</b>	التحيز	<b>cheat</b>	يفش - يخدع	<b>interview</b>	مقابله شخصيه
<b>skills</b>	مهارات	<b>ruin</b>	يؤذي - يدمر	<b>reporter</b>	مراسل
<b>exaggeration</b>	مبالغه - اسراف	<b>source</b>	مصدر	<b>eyewitness</b>	شاهد عيان
<b>description</b>	وصف	<b>report</b>	يلغ - تقرير	<b>wait for</b>	ينتظر
<b>type</b>	نوع	<b>scene</b>	مشهد	<b>summary</b>	ملخص
<b>tabloid</b>	صحيفه شعبيه	<b>surprise</b>	مفاجاه	<b>member</b>	عضو
<b>come out</b>	يَصْدُر (كتاب)	<b>share</b>	يشارك	<b>afford</b>	يتحمل تكاليف
<b>publish</b>	ينشر	<b>free</b>	حر - فاضي	<b>crime</b>	جريمه
<b>publisher</b>	ناشر - دار نشر	<b>character</b>	شخصيه	<b>criminal</b>	مجرم
<b>publication</b>	نشر	<b>ending</b>	نهايه	<b>similarity</b>	تشابه
<b>headlines</b>	عنوان رئيسي	<b>demand</b>	يطلب	<b>difference</b>	اختلاف
<b>include</b>	يتضمن	<b>damage</b>	تلف - خساره	<b>breath</b>	نفس
<b>rhymes</b>	قوافي	<b>occasion</b>	مناسبه	<b>clear</b>	واضح - يبري
<b>appear</b>	يظهر	<b>illegal</b>	غير قانوني	<b>firefighter</b>	رجل المطافي
<b>broadsheet</b>	صحفه علي ورق كبير	<b>investigator</b>	محقق	<b>fire</b>	نار - يفصل
<b>formal</b>	رسمي	<b>fans</b>	معجبين - مشجعين	<b>thankful</b>	شاكر
<b>due</b>	كاف - مناسب - حق	<b>shock</b>	صدمة	<b>pay</b>	يدفع
<b>article</b>	مقاله	<b>news</b>	الاخبار	<b>download</b>	ينزل من علي النت
<b>contents</b>	محجوزه بالكامل	<b>terrible</b>	فظيع	<b>court</b>	محكمه - ملعب تنس
<b>secret</b>	متجمد	<b>prison</b>	السجن	<b>accident</b>	حادثة
<b>commuity</b>	مجتمع	<b>behave</b>	يتصرف	<b>incident</b>	حادث مفاجي
<b>Fortunately</b>	لحسن الحظ	<b>strict</b>	حازم	<b>sum</b>	مبلغ - مسأله
<b>websites</b>	مواقع علي البت	<b>serious</b>	جاد	<b>require</b>	يتطلب
<b>up-to-date</b>	حديث	<b>current</b>	حالي	<b>punish</b>	يعاقب
<b>remove</b>	يزيل	<b>mislead</b>	يضل	<b>omission</b>	حذف
<b>Point of view</b>	وجهه نظر	<b>spin</b>	غزل - يدور حول نفسه	<b>Media Course</b>	دوره اعلاميه
<b>placement</b>	توظيف - وضع - تحديد	<b>spoil</b>	يتلف	<b>editor</b>	محرر
<b>facts</b>	حقائق	<b>certain</b>	مؤكد	<b>data</b>	بيانات
<b>support</b>	يؤيد - يساند	<b>nervousness</b>	عصبيه	<b>persuade</b>	يقنع
<b>citizen</b>	مواطن	<b>journalism</b>	الصحافه	<b>positives</b>	ايجابيات

<b>negatives</b>	سلبيات	<b>trap</b>	فخ - مصيده	<b>snowstorm</b>	عاصفه ثلجيه
<b>permission</b>	اذن	<b>dig out</b>	يحفر - ينقب	<b>spade</b>	جاروف
<b>Social media</b>	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	<b>conclude</b>	يختم - يستنتج	<b>consequently</b>	وبالتالي
<b>Refer to</b>	يشير الي	<b>personally</b>	شخصيا	<b>whilst</b>	بينما
<b>conclusion</b>	خاتمه	<b>state</b>	يحدد - حاله	<b>due to</b>	بسبب
<b>impact on</b>	تأثير علي	<b>compensate</b>	يعوض	<b>Sum up</b>	يلخص
<b>recent</b>	حديث	<b>law</b>	قانون	<b>constant</b>	مستمر
<b>regular</b>	يتطلب	<b>In my view</b>	من وجهه نظري	<b>cycle</b>	يركب عجله
<b>former</b>	السابق	<b>factual</b>	واقعي	<b>anxious</b>	قلق
<b>Danish</b>	دنماركي	<b>quality</b>	صفه - جوده	<b>In turn</b>	و بالتالي
<b>copyright</b>	حقوق الطبع	<b>interview</b>	مقابله شخصيه	<b>public</b>	العامه
<b>convict</b>	مدان - متهم	<b>rights</b>	حقوق	<b>available</b>	متاح
<b>violate</b>	ينتهك حق	<b>obtain</b>	يحصل علي	<b>effort</b>	مجهود
<b>Exclusive</b>	حصري	<b>priceless</b>	لا يقدر بثمن	<b>stunning</b>	مدهش
<b>display</b>	يعرض	<b>mention</b>	يذكر	<b>exhibitions</b>	معارض
<b>recommend</b>	يوصي - يشرح	<b>discuss</b>	يناقش	<b>exhibits</b>	معروضات
<b>opinion</b>	رأي	<b>journalist</b>	صحفي	<b>experience</b>	خبره - تجربه
<b>progress</b>	تقدم	<b>grumpy</b>	غاضب	<b>actor</b>	ممثل
<b>sequence</b>	تسلسل - سياق	<b>action</b>	فعل - حدث	<b>trainee</b>	متدرب
<b>local</b>	محلي	<b>apprenticeship</b>	تدريب مهني	<b>repeat</b>	يكرر - يعيد
<b>habits</b>	عادات	<b>feelings</b>	مشاعر	<b>volunteer</b>	متطوع
<b>break</b>	فسحه	<b>celebrity</b>	شخص مشهور	<b>rescuers</b>	منقذين
<b>block</b>	يسد - حظر	<b>traffic</b>	المرور	<b>weigh</b>	يزن
<b>captain</b>	قائد السفينه	<b>spin</b>	يلف - يدور	<b>result</b>	نتيجه
<b>route</b>	خط سير	<b>add</b>	بضيف - يجمع	<b>announce</b>	يعلن
<b>square</b>	مربع	<b>products</b>	منتجات	<b>cost</b>	تكلفه
<b>authorities</b>	سلطات	<b>bitter</b>	لاذع - مر	<b>wind</b>	الرياح
<b>accurate</b>	متقن	<b>trustful</b>	موثوق به	<b>business</b>	شركه
<b>quality</b>	جوده - صفه	<b>volunteer</b>	متطوع		

### Definitions

<b>piracy</b>	The crime of <b>illegally</b> copying and selling books, tapes, videos, computer programs	قرصنه
<b>scene</b>	A <b>single piece of action</b> that happens in one place in a film, book etc	مشهد
<b>broadsheet</b>	A newspaper printed in large <b>sheets of paper</b> ( a series newspaper)	جريده مطبوعه عل ورق كبير
<b>tabloid</b>	A newspaper that has small pages, a lot of paragraphs or stories, mainly about famous people, funny things	جريده مطبوعه علي ورق صغير
<b>investigator</b>	Someone who <b>investigate</b> things, especially crimes	محقق
<b>stunning</b>	Attractive , fantastic	مدهش
<b>bias</b>	<b>Discrimination</b> Unfairly influence attitudes, choises or decisions	انحياز
<b>inaccurate</b>	Not completely correct	غير متقن
<b>omission</b>	When you don't <b>include</b> or do something .	حذف

<b>spin</b>	<b>To turn around and around very quickly.</b>	يلف حول نفسه
<b>spin</b>	<b>To describe a situation or information in a way that is intended to influence the way people think about it.</b>	
<b>Point of view</b>	<b>A particular way of thinking about or judging a situation.</b>	وجه نظر
<b>highlights</b>	<b>The most important, interesting, or enjoyable part of something such as a holiday, performance, or sports competition.</b>	اهم الاحداث
<b>grumpy</b>	<b>Bad-tempered / easily annoyed</b>	حساد الطبع - سيء المزاج
<b>court</b>	<b>A place where a trial is held, or the people there, especially the judge who examines the evidence and decide if someone is guilty or not.</b>	محكمة
<b>Cheat</b>	<b>To behave in a dishonest way to win or to get an advantage in a competition, game, or examination. Something that is dishonest or unfair Someone who is dishonest and cheats.</b>	يفش - غش
<b>casualty</b>	<b>Someone or something that suffers as a result of a particular event or situation</b>	مصاب - ضحية
<b>balanced</b>	<b>To give equal attention to all sides or opinions ( fair)</b>	
<b>prison</b>	<b>A place where people are kept as a punishment for a crime</b>	سجن
<b>law</b>	<b>A system of rules that people must obey</b>	قانون
<b>criminal</b>	<b>Someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty</b>	

### Expressions

<b>At a lower price</b>	بثمن منخفض	<b>a Great Bitter Lake</b>	بحيره من البحيرات المره
<b>Report an event</b>	يبلغ عن حدث	<b>Terrible for business</b>	بمناسبه
<b>It is known that</b>	من المعروف ان	<b>On business</b>	في مهمه عمل
<b>On Saturdays</b>	في ايام السبت	<b>Balanced point of view</b>	وجه نظر متوازنه
<b>Double edged weapon</b>	سلاح ذو حدين	<b>In the middle</b>	في وسط
<b>Do\ cause damage</b>	يسبب تلف	<b>Havelbear responsibility</b>	يتحمل المسئوليه
<b>expert on / in / at</b>	خبير في	<b>On display</b>	معروض
<b>a ten-minute break</b>	استراحة لمدة 10 دقائق	<b>Complain to</b>	يشتكى ل
<b>On social media</b>	في وسائل التواصل	<b>Complain about</b>	يشتكى بخصوص
<b>Much more common</b>	اكثر شيوعا جدا من	<b>Complain of</b>	يشتكى من مرض
<b>An internet cheat</b>	غشاش الانترنت	<b>A large sum of money</b>	مبلغ كبير من المال
<b>Wait with bated breath</b>	ينتظر بانفاس مكبوتة	<b>Get into journalism</b>	يدخل مجال الصحافه
<b>Long-awaited</b>	الذي طال انتظاره	<b>Pros and cons</b>	مميزات و عيوب
<b>Plan to + المصدر</b>	يخطط	<b>Pesuasive essay</b>	مقال مقنع
<b>either ..... or</b>	اما و اما	<b>Keep a secret</b>	يحفظ السر
<b>Make a plan</b>	يعمل خطه	<b>It is claimed</b>	يدعي ان
<b>Play a role in</b>	يلعب دور في	<b>In a dishonest way</b>	بطريقه غير امينه
<b>in a new way</b>	بطريقه جديده	<b>Be introduced into</b>	يقدم ل
<b>Put in prison</b>	يضع في السجن	<b>illegally copy</b>	نسخه غير شرعيه
<b>a 20-year-old-student</b>	طالب ذو عشرين عاما	<b>for this reason</b>	لهذا السبب
<b>On this occasion</b>	في هذه المناسبه	<b>Encourage +SB + to</b>	يشجع ان
<b>Make a lot of money</b>	يكسب مالا		
<b>Breaking news</b>	اخبار عاجله		

<b>A news story – item- report</b>	تقرير اخباري	<b>Share with</b>	يشارك مع
<b>News agency</b>	وكالة انباء	<b>Emotional effect</b>	تأثير وجداني
<b>think of - about</b>	يفكر في	<b>Nature reserve</b>	محمية طبيعية
<b>Date back</b>	يرجع تاريخه – يعود الي	<b>To the full advantage</b>	بالشكل الامثل
<b>Central Cairo</b>	وسط القاهرة	<b>Pirated digital copies</b>	نسخ رقميه مقرصنه
<b>floor plan= ground plan</b>	مخطط توضيحي للمبني	<b>Bus lane</b>	خط اتوبيس
<b>Angry about</b>	غاضب بخصوص	<b>Break the news</b>	اذاع الخبر
<b>Digital version</b>	نسخه رقميه	<b>Print version</b>	نسخه مطبوعه
<b>A broadsheet</b>	صحيفه مطبوعه علي ورق	<b>Wait for</b>	ينتظر ل
<b>at high speed</b>	بسرعه عاليه	<b>reports on their matches</b>	تقارير
<b>rely on</b>	يعتمد عل	<b>at the top of the page</b>	في قمه الصفحه

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
<b>include</b>	يتضمن	<b>inclusion</b>	تضمنين - اشتمال	<b>included</b>	متضمن
<b>pirate</b>	يقرصن	<b>Pirate- piracy</b>	قرصان - قرصنه	<b>piratical</b>	قابل للقرصنه
<b>explain</b>	يشرح	<b>explanation</b>	تفسير	<b>explanatory</b>	مشروح
<b>investigate</b>	يحقق	<b>investigation</b>	تحقيق	<b>Investigatory</b>	محقق
<b>imprison</b>	يسجن	<b>Prison- prisoner</b>	سجن - سجين		
<b>complain</b>	يشكو	<b>complaint</b>	شكوي		
<b>Claim</b>	يدعي	<b>Claim</b>	ادعاء		مكتوب
<b>report</b>	يبلغ	<b>Reporter&amp; report</b>	مذيع - تقرير	<b>reported</b>	متفاعل
<b>cheat</b>	يخدع - بغش	<b>cheat</b>	غش - خداع		مناقش
<b>copy</b>	ينسخ	<b>copy</b>	اصدار - نسخه		مطبوع
<b>dust</b>	ينظف	<b>dust</b>	تراب	<b>dusty</b>	قدر
<b>celebrate</b>		<b>celebrity</b>	شخص مشهور	<b>celebrated</b>	مشهور
		<b>Law-lawyer</b>	قانون- محامي	<b>lawful</b>	قانوني
<b>trap</b>	يعمل فخ	<b>trap</b>	فخ	<b>trapped</b>	محبوس
<b>rescue</b>	ينقذ	<b>Rescue- rescuer</b>	انقاذ - منقذ	<b>rescued</b>	منقذ
<b>interview</b>	يقابل	<b>Interviewer- interviewee</b>	المذيع- طالب الوظيفه	<b>interviewable</b>	قابل لمقابله
<b>produce</b>	ينتج	<b>Production- producer</b>	انتاج - منتج	<b>productive</b>	انتاجي
<b>secure</b>	يؤمن	<b>security</b>	الامن	<b>secure</b>	امن - مؤمن
<b>personate</b>	يجسد	<b>personality</b>	شخصيه	<b>personal</b>	شخصي
<b>view</b>	يشاهد - يدرس	<b>view</b>	رأي	<b>viewable</b>	قابل للعرض
<b>shock</b>	يصدم	<b>shock</b>	صدمة	<b>shocked</b>	مصدوم
<b>contain</b>	يحتوي علي	<b>contents</b>	محتويات	<b>containable</b>	قابل للاحتواء

## Antonyms

Word	Antonym
<b>include</b>	<b>exclude</b> يستبعد
<b>inclusion</b>	<b>exclusion</b> استبعاد
<b>block</b>	<b>Free- unblock</b> يطلق سراح
<b>digital</b>	<b>analogue</b> غير رقمي
<b>appear</b>	<b>disappear</b> يختفي
<b>careful</b>	<b>careless</b> مهمل
<b>legal</b>	<b>illegal</b> غير قانوني
<b>download</b>	<b>upload</b> ينزل من النت
<b>highlight</b>	<b>Background-play down</b> الاقل اهميه
<b>common</b>	<b>Uncommon- individual</b> غير شائع – مغمور

<b>Formal</b>	رسمي	<b>informal</b>	غير رسمي
<b>trap</b>	فخ	<b>release</b>	اطلاق سراح
<b>usual</b>	معتاد	<b>unusual</b>	غير معتاد
<b>experienced</b>	ذو خبرة	<b>inexperienced</b>	بلا خبرة
<b>support</b>	يؤيد	<b>oppose</b>	يعارض
<b>belief</b>	اعتقاد - تصديق	<b>disbelief</b>	عدم تصديق - انكار
<b>respect</b>	احترام	<b>disrespect</b>	لا احترام - ازدراء
<b>secure</b>	يؤمن	<b>Insecure - unprotected</b>	
<b>security</b>	الامن	<b>insecurity</b>	عدم الامن
<b>volunteer</b>	متطوع	<b>Draftee -paid</b>	مجنّد
<b>convict</b>	المتهم - المدان	<b>innocent -acquit</b>	بريء
<b>mention</b>	يذكر - يقول	<b>conceal</b>	يتجاهل - يخفي

## Synonyms

Word	Synonyms	
type	Sort - kind - species	نوع
security	Protection – preservation- guaranty- safety	امن
stunning	attractive	يصر علي
rescue	Save – clear – release – set free	ينقذ
book	reserve	يحجز
bias	discimination	انحياز
view	Opinion – sight- scenery- scene	مشهد- رأي
priceless	precious	لا يقدر بثمن
style	locution اسلوب – mode اسلوب	طراز - موضه
cheat	Deceit – fraud -deception	يغش – خداع- غش
prison	Jail- imprisonment-	سجن
block	prevent	سحذث
occur	Happen – take place	يحدث
compensate	Make up for	يعوض
common	Mutual - popular	عام - شامل
piracy	Privateering – fraud -looting	قرصنه
mention	Remind –remmeber -indicate	يذكر
quality	Goodness - fineness	جوده -صفه
obtain	get	يحصل علي

[illegible]

## Language Notes

## 1- MAKE / DO

- نستخدم (make) عندما نتحدث عن تقديم أو بناء أو عمل شيء جديد.

<b>make a noise</b>	يُخْدِث ضَوْضَاءَ	<b>make arrangements</b>	يَعْمَلُ تَرْتِيبَاتٍ
<b>make a hole</b>	يَصْنَعُ ثَقْبَ	<b>make a mistake</b>	يُرْتَكِبُ خَطَأً
<b>make a speech</b>	يُلْقِي خُطَابًا	<b>make a phone call</b>	يَعْمَلُ مَكَالِمَةً
<b>make a discovery</b>	يَكْتَشِفُ	<b>make trouble</b>	يَسَبِّبُ مَتَاعِبَ
<b>make a decision</b>	يَقْرُرُ	<b>make a promise</b>	يُوعِدُ
<b>make a journey</b>	يَقُومُ بِرَحْلَةٍ	<b>make achievements</b>	يُحَقِّقُ انْجَازَاتٍ
<b>make a suggestion</b>	يَقْتَرِحُ	<b>make money -a fortune</b>	يَكْسِبُ مَالًا
<b>make a note</b>	يُسْجَلُ مِلَاحَظَةٌ	<b>make ....available for</b>	يَجْعَلُهُ مَتَاحًا لـ

يشعل نار  
يقوم بمجهود  
يصادق  
يرتب السراير

**a**

do washing up	يفعل الأطباق
do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
do housework	يؤدي الأعمال المنزلية
do business	يقوم بعمل تجارى
do exercise	يقوم بتدريب
do repairs	يجري إصلاحات
do a quiz	يقوم بعمل مسابقة
do his best	يبدل قصارى جهده
do a project on	يعمل مشروع
do the ironing	يقوم بالكوي
do cooking	يقوم بالطهي
do the laundry	يقوم بغسل الملابس
do an activity	يقوم بنشاط
do judo	يلعب جودو

**- We did a class survey today.**

***I as well as my brother am very keen on politics.***

- هذه الروابط يأتي بعدها جملة ( فاعل ثم فعل ) و تعني بالرغم من
- تأتي هذه الروابط في أول أو وسط الجملة
- تأتي **but** في وسط الجملة ويأتي بعدها جملة كاملة

He was happy **although/ even if /even though/though** he was poor.

**01228699122**



**Despite,**  
**In spite of,**  
**Regardless of,** + اسم (V. ing) + الجملة الثانية  
**With all,**  
**For all**

- ⇒ **In spite of being** poor, he was happy.  
 ⇒ **Despite his poverty**, he was happy.  
 ⇒ **Despite being clever**, he got low marks in exams.

#### 4- **After + ماضى بسيط + ماضى تام**

**After + مستقبل او امر + مضارع بسيط هو مضارع تام**

**After** ماضى بسيط + اسم او الفعل به **ing** + بدون فاعل

- **After he had graduated**, he worked abroad.  
 → **After he graduates**, he will work abroad.  
 → **After graduating**, he worked abroad.

#### 5- **Stop to + infinitive** يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا

• He **stopped to read** his newspaper.

♦ **Stop + gerund (v+ing)** يتوقف عن عمل شيء

• He **stopped reading** his newspaper.

#### 6- **accident** حادثه **-incident** حدث في قصه- جريده **-event** حدث مميز

He was **killed** in a car **accident**. Today's news is full of **incidents**.

January Revolution is **a great event**.

#### 7- **experience** تجربة حياتية - I had some **interesting experiences** while my travels.

- **experience v.** يمر بشيء - She **experienced** the worst time of her life in the hospital.

- **experiment** تجربة علمية - Teachers **carry out simple experiments** in the laboratory.

#### 8. **damage** يتلف - تلف **- damages=compensations** تعويضات

#### 9 - **affect** يؤثر علي **- have an effect on** له تأثير علي **- effective** مؤثر

**Influence** مؤثر **- influential** له تأثير علي **- have an Influence on**

**Impact** له تأثير علي **- have an impact on**

#### 10 - He took a ten ( **minutes - minute's - minutes' - minute** ) break for coffee.

- He is a **20-year-old student**.

The astronauts usually do **two-hour space walks**.

- I spent **a (one) year's time** in bed after that accident.

- She spent **four months' time** in bed after that accident.

- I usually have **a ten-minute break** between my study sessions.

- **a three-day conference / three day conferences / a two-hour drive / ten years' time.**

يمكن التعامل مع الاسم علي انه معدود مثل المثال الاول التالي ويمكن يكون غير معدود مثل المثال الثاني

\* We went on **a three-year mission** in space.

\* We went on **three years' mission** in space.

11. **queue** طابور رأسى يقف فى طابور - **row** صف أفقى يجدف - **line** خط يصطف

-There was a long queue outside the cinema. -I always sit in the first row in class.  
-Can you draw a straight line without a ruler?

12. **Frequent** متردد - **frequently** مرارا و تكرارا - **frequency** تردد

-John is a frequent tourist to Egypt. They frequently visit their grandparents.  
Do you know the frequency of the Sports channel?

13. - **Mention** يذكر - **remind** يجعل شخص يتذكر - **remember** يتذكر بنفسه- يرسل تحيات

-Mention the causes of the population growth? Please remind me of the time of the meeting.

-She reminded me that we had to pay the telephone bill.

-Please remember to pay the telephone bill.

-I remember visiting Port Said when I was young. -Remember me to your kind father.

14. **Stun** يدهش - **Sting (stung)** يلدغ - **Stunt** دوبلير

-His performance has stunned everyone. -He died when a scorpion stung him.

-He works as a stunt for many famous actors

15. **Come out** ينشر/يصدر مبنى للمعلوم - **Publish** ينشر طباعة مبنى للمجهول - **Spread** ينشر/يجعله يعم أو يسود

-Egypt always tries to spread peace in the Middle East.

-His last story was published in 2019. - His last story came out in 2019.

16. **Spin** يدور حول نفسه - **orbit** يدور حول شيء

-The earth spins around its axis. -The earth orbits the sun.

18. **Omit** يحذف - **emit** ينبعث - ينطلق

-The book omitted any mention of the king's illness. -Cars emit harmful gases

19. **Location** موقع محدد - **destination** مقصد - جهة وصول

-Do you know the location of the new branch of the bank?

Do you know the destination of these tourists?

20- **Contain** ( يحتوى علي شيء بداخله )

**include** ( متضمنا - شاملا ) & **including** ( يشتمل علي يتضمن - من الصعب فصله )

- **Consist of** ( يتكون من ) & **enclose** ( يحيط ب - يرفق شيء بشيء )

The museum contains a number of original artworks.

The price for the hotel includes breakfast.

His job includes looking after the animals in the garden.

The football team should consist of eleven people.

They stole everything in my purse, including my credit cards.

The swimming pool was enclosed by a high fence.

21- **cause** ( يسبب ) & **to** مصدر ( يجعل )

**cause of** + سبب ( يؤدي الي نتيجته ) & **reason for** + **v ing** سبب - مبرر /

**reason why** جملة كامله +

Scientists are trying to find out what causes the disease.

The cold weather caused me to sleep early



What was **the cause of the fire**?

Can you give the **reason for leaving** ?

I don't know the **reason why he came late**.

22- **Do wrong** ( يعمل خطأ ) **go wrong** ( يتعطل ) **make a mistake**

23- **Breathe** ( يتنفس ) **breath** ( التنفس الي الرئتين ) **breathing** ( عملية التنفس ) **breeze** (النسيم)

24- **require** يتطلب - يستلزم **acquire** يكتسب **inquire** يسأل

-The college **acquired a reputation** for very high standards.

The project **requires considerable investment**.

We rang the hospital again **to inquire** how the old man was.

25- **Permission** ( تصريح - موافقه ) **permit** ( تصريح شفهي ) **licence** ( رخصه لاستخدام شيء )

Ali drove his father's car **without his permission**

People from other countries **require work permits**.

One can't drive **a car without a driving licence**

## READING

### New Harry Potter Book shown on line

Photographs of all 784 **pages** of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows have **appeared on the internet** four days before J. K . Rowling's final book is due **to be published**. **It is not known** who took the photographs of **the book, whose contents** have been **kept a secret** before the book **is published** at 12.01 am Saturday. Some **websites** have **removed** the photos **after receiving warnings** from **the publisher's lawyers**, but photos of the book can still be read **on other sites**. **It is also claimed** that some people were **typng up** the photos to share **on social media**. This all **occured despite the careful security** which has been put in a place before the book is published. This **included asking** the **booksellers** not to tell in the media when or if they had copies of the book. **The incident highlights** the problems of online book **piracy**, which is becoming much more **common**.

### Internet cheat ruins Potter surprise

Just four days before J.K.Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, **an internet cheat** has **shared** every page of the book online. This has **ruined** the surprise for millions of readers, who have been **waiting with bated breath** to **find out** what happens to the famous **character**. Several websites show photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows , which means that you can read the whole book online, **including the long-awaited ending**. Lawyers have **demandd** that the websites **stop showing** the illgal photos and, **fortunetaly**, some websites have agreed. **However**, other peole have typed up the text from the photos and likely to share the story on other websites. Fans of Harry Potter were shocked by the news. " It's **terrible** says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to buy the new book for her children. " The person who has done this **should be put in prison** ."

## Grand Museum for Cairo

When the Egyptian Museum was built in 1901 it was one of the largest museums in the Middle East. It had over 120,000 exhibits but only some could be displayed and the rest were unseen in storerooms. Some people complained that the 19th century museum was a little dark and dusty too, so priceless exhibits couldn't be displayed to their full advantage. Others claimed that the small rooms meant that there was always a queue to see the famous Tutankhamun. A frequent visitor to the Museum, Salma Ahmed mentioned that the very busy traffic in central Cairo also made the building difficult to get to. Salma told us that the old museum was beautiful but more space and a better location was needed in the 21st century. The solution to these problems is the new Grand Egyptian Museum at Giza, a stunning location next to the pyramids, looking towards the Western Desert. This exciting project is a state of the art space with interactive exhibits and a floor plan that takes you on a journey through the treasures of Egyptian antiquity. Salma denied that the new museum was too expensive and argued that Egypt's historic past should be displayed in a wonderful setting for all to see. No one can complain about that!

~~~~~

### 1- Bias انحياز by placement

- Position of the article on the page – the stories at the top of the page are the ones which the editor thinks are the most important

### 2- Bias انحياز by omission

- Leaving out certain stories • Leaving out facts or certain information which does not agree with the writer's point of view

### 3- Bias انحياز by 'spin'

- Choosing examples or data which support one side • Presenting an opinion as a fact. • Using emotional language to persuade the reader

### 4- Spin is a type of media bias. Some journalists use words and phrases to support or oppose a service, product or even an idea

~~~~~

12 hours trapped in my car in Germany. Thousands of us are trapped in our cars after a record snowstorm, about 20 cms of snow an hour. A few people with spades are trying to dig out their cars. Snow's now stopped, and some people are leaving their cars to try and walk home.

~~~~~

## LISTENING TEXT

### 1. A student reporter is interviewing a journalist

S. Reporter: How did you get into journalism?

Journalist : I started as a trainee on a local newspaper and after two weeks was chosen for a three-year apprenticeship.

S. Reporter: What advice can you give a student reporter like me?

Journalist : When you're doing an interview don't ask too many questions, let the

**person talk and always listen** very carefully, give both sides of the story and make sure any **facts** or **quotes** are accurate. If you're writing a news story try to be **objective** and not to show your own feelings or opinions.

**S. Reporter: Have you ever interviewed anyone famous?**

**Journalist :** I've interviewed **lots of celebrities** **including** Amr Diab, Carmen Suleiman and Sandy.

**S. Reporter: Who was the most annoying person you've interviewed?**

**Journalist :** There have been quite a few; one was a very **grumpy** **well-known actor**.

**S. Reporter: Is it a hard job?**

**Journalist :** It can be sometimes but **journalists** usually love what they do.

**S. Reporter: What kind of person does a good journalist have to be?**

**Journalist :** You obviously have to be good at writing, but you also have to be **a naturally nosy person** and you really need to be interested in people.

**S. Reporter: What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists?**

**Journalist :** Get some **experience** on the school newspaper or work for a local newspaper for free and don't **give up**, keep trying until someone gives you a chance. I **did many voluntary jobs** while I was at university and I **applied for** 18 jobs before I **got my first paid job** 12 years later. I'm still here.

**Manal: Mom, Soha** **has broken the computer**; it's not working.

**Soha: I didn't break it, Manal.**

**Manal: But you used it last.**

**Soha: Yes, but it was already broken when I** **tried to use** it.

**Mom: Sorry girls, I** **forgot to say** that it broke yesterday.

**Dad: That computer is always breaking; we need a new one.**

### **1. A talk about media bias**

So, moving on, what exactly is bias? First of all, **let's look at bias by omission**. This **means leaving** something out, for example, **a fact or a quote** which maybe doesn't **support the writer's point of view**.

Let's look at some examples; **imagine** Heba over here every morning **checks** the same website to read the news. She likes the way the **articles** are written and feels that she is getting good information, but one day her friend Marwa over here **recommends** **a different news site**. When Heba looks at this, she sees completely different news stories with a very different **point of view**. Let's say that on Heba's website there is a big story about how angry people are that **a local factory** is about to close. Marwa's website has the same story, but it doesn't **mention** that anyone is angry. The writer has **omitted** this information to make us feel differently about the story.

**The second type of bias might be placement**. On Heba's website the story is at the top of the page with a big photo and large text. This gives the **impression** that it is an

important story, but on Marwa's website the story is very short on the third page and very low down on the page where people might not see it.

**The third type of bias is spin.** The writer tries to make the reader feel the same way they do about a topic and doesn't **present a balanced point of view.** They do this by choosing certain words, for example **"argued the factory manager"** instead of **"agreed the factory manager"**. Secondly, they **choose to include** certain information and leave other information out. Thirdly, they give only one **point of view.** In our example, the journalist gives **the reaction** of the staff in the factory but not the managers. It **misleads the reader** into thinking it is a bad thing. On the other hand, in Marwa's story it is **presented** as a good thing. It **mentions** that there is **a lot of pollution caused by the factory.**

## WB

### Piracy is a crime

In **recent** , **a new former Danish student** in her late 20s was **punished for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks.** **The criminal lawyer stated** that the **convict** has now received a punishment for violating copyright law when asked to give a reason why she sold books that she does not **own the rights** to, the student said she was helping students **obtain** books **at a lower price.** It **was made clear** to her that copying e books that one does not own the rights to is **illegal** . **In addition to being** punished by law, she is also **required** by law. She is also **required to pay a large sum of money for the crime of piracy.**

~~~~~

### Ever Given blocks Suez Canal

**Rescuers** have finally moved **a huge ship which blocked traffic going through the Suez Canal.** The ship, called the Ever Given, is 400 meters long and **weighs** 200,000 tonnes. It is one of the largest of this **type** of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal **on 23 March** when there was a **sand storm.** The ship's **captain** said that **a strong wind spun** the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. The **result** was that no ships could travel past the ship for nearly a week. Yesterday, more than 380 ships were **waiting** to pass through the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was **another route.** A few of the ships' captains **decided to go** around the south of Africa instead, but this **added** about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries **announced** that they would **send products by air**, but this is about three times more expensive as sending it by ship. The **accident** was **terrible** for **businesses** around the world. That is because around 12% of the world's business products pass through the canal each day so the accident cost both Egypt and the other countries millions of dollars.

Luckily, smaller Egyptian boats finally were able to move the Ever Given yesterday. They **did an amazing jobs.** They moved around 30,000 **square** meters of sand under the ship before they took the ship to **the Great Bitter Lake**, in the middle

of the canal. The canal authorities told us that they won't know the true cause of the accident until they **investigate**. Although the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal won't return to normal for many days. **Experts** are **investigating** the possible **casualties** for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be **compensated financially**.

~~~~~

**Millions to be spent on project that will make our traffic worse!**

Car drivers are angry about plans to open a new bus lane from the city centre. The plan, which will cost an enormous LE200 million, will stop all cars using Nile Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "Traffic in the city is already terrible," says businesswoman Mrs El Baz. "If they close Nile Road, it will be even worse." Another business person who uses South Road regularly, Mr Fawzy says, "Why are they planning to close roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to take buses because they are too slow."

~~~~~

**New route to serve university**

There are plans for a new bus lane from the city centre to the university. The LE200-million project will mean closing Nile Road to cars, but will make the journey by bus 30 minutes faster. The organisers believe the project will help attract students to the university and that the electric buses will also reduce pollution. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a long-term plan to persuade people to use public transport rather than driving, to help reduce traffic and air pollution.

~~~~~

**Exciting plan for hotel**

A new, modern hotel is planned for White Beach. There will be rooms for 200 people and most will look out over the beautiful beach. The project should give work to many local people and bring more tourists to a beach that few people know about. They will also open a new road to the hotel, to replace the old one which is difficult to drive down.

## Writing

(شرح المقال في اخر الكتاب )

**A persuasive essay**

**Social Media has a negative impact on news and society**

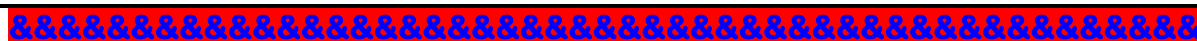
Social media has become the main source of news. These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access get their news from social media. **Although** this means that we can find news easily and get regular updates on our phones, **in my view** I think that social media has **a negative impact on** news and society.

**To begin** with, this constant cycle of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed and worried. A recent survey found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious and sleep badly **because of the** news.

**Next**, not everything we read or see **on social media is true and factual**. If we share it, before checking the facts, we might **spread false information**. **In turn**, this means that the public **stop trusting journalists and news in general**.

**Lastly**, social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become the '**managing editors**'. They share news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not balanced or objective.

**In summary**, whilst it is a good thing that we have so much news available and it is easy to keep **up-to-date** with **current affairs**, we need to avoid the **negative effects**. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have **a social responsibility** to make every effort not to **spread inaccurate** or **misleading news**.



### Exercises

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1 The ..... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.

A impact                      B face                      C scar                      D surface

2 What is the best ..... for a headache?

A treat                      B treatment                      C illness                      s D surgeon

3- The police have suspected that the man was the criminal so he was sent to the.....to be judged.

A court                      B police station                      C prison                      D place

4 The students will be playing tennis on ..... number four this afternoon.

A court                      B caught                      C field                      D place

5 Adam's football team is not very good. They usually lose in the first ..... of the competition.

A number                      B final                      C round                      D cup

6 Doctors keep the ..... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.

A paper                      B records                      C placements                      D figures

7. The man who.....suddenly through the dark made us all so terrified that we ran away when we saw him.

A disappear                      B appear                      C places                      D meet

8. The police have closed the train station because there has been an.....

A occasion                      B incident                      C event                      D encourage

9. Scientists hope to develop an ..... that uses solar energy to fly.

A ship                      B fly                      C aircraft                      D bicycle

10- I told my friend that this problem is .....and he shouldn't tell any one about it

A public                      B general                      C secret                      D warnings

11.A man has been found dead in the road. The police think it was an accident, not .....

A an event                      B a crime                      C-an incident                      D-a game.

12. There are some wonderful.....in Al Ahram Weekly this week.

A articles                      B tale                      C poets                      D papers

13. If you want to see.....things, you can visit the Grand Museum in Cairo

A available                      B valuable                      C petrify                      D modern



14. Sharm el sheikh is considred as a nature .....on the coast of the Red Sea.  
**A book                      B preserve                      C reserve                      D protected**
- 15.....examined the statue deciding that it was false.  
**A Geologists                      B Teachers                      C Experts                      D Engineers**
16. Did I ..... that I'm going to the park after school?  
**A tell                      B comment                      C whisper                      D mention**
17. This chicken is not cooked very well. I'm going to ..... to the waiter.  
**A tell                      B complain                      C call                      D scream**
18. The police accused my neighbor.....stealing my car.  
**A on                      B in                      C of                      D off**
19. The patient should have his medicines.....or his state will be worse.  
**A gradually                      B regularly                      C day                      D orally**
- 20-..... The crime of illegally copying and selling books, tapes, videos, computer programs  
**A Theft                      B robbery                      C Murder                      D Piracy**
21. He couldn't attend his daughter's marriage.....his illness.  
**A because                      B due to                      C despite                      D as**
- 22.A.....is someone who decides what will be published on the newspapers or magazines and where will be published.  
**a) publisher                      b) beggar                      c) writer                      d) editor**
23. The teacher..... to know why the students were all late.  
**a) demanded                      b) forced                      c) told                      d) wandered**
- 24-Not many people have read my cousin's book because she could not find a.....  
**a) library                      b) publisher                      c) bookshop                      d) bookseller**
- 25.Someone who is involved in illegal activities or has been proved guilty is.....  
**a) cheat                      b) criminal                      c) officer                      d) bookseller**
- 26.I have a very..... teacher who tolerates no jokes at all.  
**a) funny                      b) strict                      c) optimistic                      d) thoughtful**
- 27.The teacher became very..... after the kids started causing problems.  
**a) serious                      b) seriousness                      c) seriously                      d) joking**
28. "News play an important role in society nowadays." A synonym for "role" is .....  
**a. part                      b. chart                      c. crisp                      d. curse**
29. He wouldn't try to ( **mislead -cheated-thief-make up** )you. It's not his style.
30. Of course robbery is against the ( **court - judge - lawyer - law** ).
- 31.There's no fixed ( **prize - price - breeze - pounds** ) in this market . You should debate well to get what you want..
32. Yehia Haqqi was an ( **expert - experience - experiment - exporter** ) on Arab culture.
33. In addition to ( **write - writing - wrote - to write** ) novels, he also translated a lot of books..
- 34.Students in all kinds of schools should practise the four ( **skulls-things-skills- languages** ) reading,writing,listening and speaking to be fluent in languages.
- 35.We all were surprised when the coach announced the ( **exclusion-inclusion-treatment-denial** ) of Shikabala to our national team as he does not like him.
- 36.My hobbies ..... reading and painting.  
**a. consist                      b. contain                      c. include                      d attitude**
- 37.The police reached the ( **location- destination- scene-placement** ) of the crime.They prevented anyone from touching anything.
- 38.My job ( **contains- cosists-includes- have** ) making copies, answering phones, and other duties.
- 39.- The incident ..... the problems of online book piracy.  
**a) highways                      b) highlights                      c) heights                      d) high quality**

40. I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple.....  
 a) stand                      b) steel                      c) stool                      d) style
41. We start the ( formal- informal-friendly-officially ) email with "Dear Sir".
42. My father bought the latest (middle- mark- model- style ) of Toyota.  
 It is a full option car.
43. We are proud of Mohammed Salah for ..... achievements in the Champions League.  
 a) carrying                      b) scoring                      c) doing                      d) making
44. My brother wants to be a lawyer when he graduates, he's studying..... at university.  
 a) law                      b) low                      c) lawful                      d) lower
46. The bank ..... the company from bankruptcy.  
 a. served                      b. rescued                      c. motioned                      d. mentioned
47. As well as ..... an important writer, he was an expert on Arabic culture.  
 a) being                      b) to be                      c) be                      d) having been
48. The government ..... a lot of charitable organisations financially.  
 a- supports                      b) opposes                      c) allows                      d)
49. The ( a ddresses- headlines-ranks-awards) of the newspaper main articles printed in red.
50. Adel Emam is an excellent actor. He (performs-operates-pretends-makes) on the stage perfectly.
51. Police are looking for the .....who stole a car yesterday. The main suspect is a man in his forties.  
 A innocent                      B criminal                      C lawyer                      D officer
52. The teacher asked the students to give him (paraphrase- summary- total - total) of the story they have read at home
53. The criminal should be pnished and spent some years of their lives in .....  
 A streets                      B prisons                      Cschoools                      D factortes
54. The famous journalist writes film (revisions-reviews- criticism- clerks) for the newspapers
55. Modern poems don't always follow the rules. They have either no words that (go-match- rhyme- similar)
56. All on the plane were killed, ..... the pilot.  
 a. included                      b. includes                      c. include                      d. including
57. There are a lot of (resources-sources-friends- helpers) on the internet that we can use to get a lot of information.
58. A (diplomat - publisher - partner - performer) is someone who produces books, newspapers or magazines.
59. Students should include some extracts from famous poems in their essays .The antonym of include is( remove- exclude- get away- escape)
60. In many countries, the police ask the suspected men to give him their cards to.....them  
 A release                      B identify                      C identity                      D quality
61. With the expansion of the Internet, ..... has grown more widespread.  
 a. piracy b. pirated c. pirate d. private
62. There are ( terrifying- freezing-plunging-wonderful ) temperatures in the North Pole.
63. In this recession , the company's profits ( increased-plunged-pertrified- improved)50%.
64. My brother has joined the faculty of flying. He is going to fly a-an ( plain-car- vehicle- aircraft)
65. The manager is busy ( operating-competing- interviewing-speaking) some job applicants.
66. The product ( announce- claims-accuses- advises)that it can make you thin without dieting.
67. (Habits - Cultures - Civilizations - Customs) are things that people do every day, month year,etc regularly.
- 68- Ali ..... that Tarek broke the window, but Tarek is innocent!

a-claimed                      b-clapped                      c-calmed                      d-mention

69. If people must obey the (law- roles- professionals-officials ) to be equal. .

70. Our head teacher is ..... He is always quiet and does not often laugh?

a) furious                      b) serious                      c) genius                      d) curious

71. Hany's parents give him everything he wants; they ..... him.

a) spill                      b) split                      c) spell                      d) spoil

72. My father said that his teacher was very..... . My father couldn't talk in his lessons!

a serious                      b strict                      c fatherly                      d kind

73. Nabila .....her grandchildren. She always gives them lots of food and presents!

a annoys                      b hates                      c spills                      d spoils

74. This film is very..... . I'd prefer to watch something that will make us laugh!

a sensible                      b funny                      c serious                      d fun

75. The minister was dishonest, so the president ..... him.

a) donated                      b) imprisoned                      c) honored                      d) persuaded

76. Earthquakes.....is not predictable.

A-happen                      B-expectence                      C-occurrence                      D-watching

77- A youth was seriously injured in an .....last night.

A event                      B incident                      C criminal                      D walking

78. "She was shocked by the bad news" A synonym for "shocked" is .....

a. suspected                      b. stunned                      c. relaxed                      d. relieved

79. "A strong wind spun the sip." A synonym for "spun" here is .....

a. straightened                      b. whirled                      c. assisted                      d. helped

80. "We are happy to announce the engagement of our daughter." A synonym for "announce" here is .....

a. conceal                      b. hide                      c. decline                      d. declare

81. "The victim demanded that he get a compensation." A synonym for "demanded" here is .....

a. obliged                      b. requested                      c. inquired                      d. enquired

82. "The crime is presently being investigated by the police." "Investigated" means .....

a. overlooked                      b. ignored                      c. examined                      d. neglected

83. "Nothing will ever compensate for his lost childhood." "Compensate" means .....

a. own up to                      b. make up for                      c. fine                      d. penalize

84. "They announced their engagement." The opposite of "announced" is .....

a. concealed                      b. stated                      c. declared                      d. pronounced

85. The incident ..... when it was dark and raining heavily.

a. played                      b. placed                      c. occurred                      d. positioned

86. There was nobody in the house (rather than - other than - otherwise - other) Ali.

87. Winning the gold medal at the Olympics was the (highlight - important - nervousness - achieved ) of his career .

88. The ( trainee- trainer- interviewer- interviewee ) is the person who wants to gain skills.

89. The ( trainee- trainer- interviewee- interviewer ) is the person who is asked in an interview.

90. The ( trainee- trainer- interviewee- interviewer ) is the person who wants others to gain skills.

91. If you want to make a ( excuse- complaint-require-demand ) due to the bad product, you should meet the manager

92. Despite their different ( characters- personally- personification-personalities ), they get on with each other.

93. The police stopped the woman in front of the hotel and searched the ( inclusinn- contents- encloses-surfac ) of her bag.

94. There are some dangerous ..... in the Red Sea who attack ships

A-gang B-violent C-killers D-pirates

95. There was a long..... in front of the cinema to buy tickets of the film.

A - queue B - row C - lane D- raw

96. Nothing can ..... for the loss of the parents.

a. consist b. compensate c. revolve d. indicate

97. The trainees work at their machines under (threats- instructions- structures-threatens) of the supervisor.

98. The book is scheduled for ..... in the autumn.

a. donation b. community c. publication d. instruction

99 - My friend is ( joking - fun - serious - seriously ) quiet and does not often laugh.

100- He was ..... when he heard about his brother's accident.

A - shock B - shocking C - shocked D- shocks

101- The news of his brother's accident gave him a .....

A - shock B - shocking C - shocked D- shocks

102. The policeman ordered the ..... to drop his weapon.

a. visual b. visible c. local d. criminal

103. The divorce ..... awarded custody to the child's mother.

a. chart b. court c. smart d. cart

104. Nowadays almost everyone ..... a computer; they are available everywhere.

a. owes b. moans c. means d. owns

105. The convict had to pay a large ..... of money to the family of the victim.

a. some b. summit c. consume d. sum

106. The divers could pinpoint the ( destination- location- orders- placement ) of the sunken ship.

107. I don't know French, so I bought the English ( copies- version-division-vision ) of the book.

108. There are a lot of passengers standing in a ( row- raw- queue-line ) waiting the bus.

109. The husband that helps his wife is a real (treasure- pressure-measure-wealth).

110. The lift broke down on the 10<sup>th</sup> floor and a lot of people were ( stick- stuck-stung-taught) inside it.

111. The treasures of the ancient Egyptians are ( worthless- priceless- helpless-emotional)

112- In many countries, people have to carry (an individual-an identity-a personal-a national) card to prove who they are.

113- The play has been performed without a (brick-break-brake-broke) for three years

114. Bombing civilians is a cruel (dime-crime-criminal-chrome) against humanity.

115- A convicted مدان (criminal-murder-crime-crime) was executed أعدم yesterday for killing some children.

116- The company ( mention-demanded- investigated-wandered ) a lot of damages for its losses.

117 .I haven't seen the film, so don't ..... it for me by telling me what happens.

a) speck b) snail c) spoil d) spill

118- Adel's job is very stressful He is a ..... and his work is often very dangerous

a) pressure b) editor c) firefighter d) driver

119- Recording companies continue efforts to fight internet.....

A- piracy B-conspiracy C- fancy D- pirate

120- The earthquake of Egypt..... in 1991.

A- take place B- occurred C- came D- died

121- The prices of goods vary according to supply and.....

1. a-defend                      b-mend                      c-mind                      d-demand

122.A.....is someone who produces books , newspapers or magazines.

a) publisher                      b) beggar                      c) writer                      d) editor

123.His..... seems to be worse when visitors come.

a) behave                      b) favour                      c) behaviour                      d) behold

124.Some websites have removed the photos after receiving .....from the publisher's lawyers.

a-warnings                      b-warming                      c-watching                      d-belonging

125.He ..... an urgent telephone call asking for help.

a) did                      b) revised                      c) made                      d) delivered

126.This survey was ..... by phone and asked people's political opinions.

a) made                      b) done                      c) acted                      d) represented

127.Will you ..... me a favour and post this letter for me?

a) make                      b) do                      c) present                      d) offer

128.We rewarded her as she didn't ..... in the exam. She depended on herself

a) make                      b) cheat                      c) do                      d) play

129.Al -Ahram Weekly..... a lot of articles about science every week.

a-writes                      b- translates                      c - publishes                      d - does

130-The sports team has a good ..... between people who are fast and people who are strong.

a) distinctive                      b) balance                      c) balanced                      d) lanes

131- The students waited with .....breath to know the result of the exam.

a-bated                      b-pitied                      c-baited                      d-patted

132.A system of rules that people must obey is a.....

a- style                      b- task                      c-way                      d-law

133.-Someone who is dishonest and deceives people is a.....

a- deceit                      b- cheat                      c-thieves                      d-lawyer

134.-I'm sorry for being ( quite- quiet-nervous-helpful ). I've been under a lot of stress at work lately.

135.He is dishonest. He has ..... my personal secrets online.

a. cared                      b. shared                      c. cheered                      d. chanted

136.. The two countries agreed to work together to strengthen border .....

a. safely                      b. occurrence                      c. currency                      d. security

137.. Social ..... are changing the way people communicate, work, and shop.

a. media                      b. mania                      c. trail                      d. trial

138- Book piracy.....the publisher's surprise.

a-rains                      b-reins                      c-runs                      d-ruins

139. Everyone can ..... knowledge through practice.

a. detain                      b. obtain                      c. aspect                      d. detail

140. .... protects your work from being commercially exploited by someone else.

a. Photocopying                      b. Copyright                      c. Enterprise                      d. repu

~~~~~

## Grammar

### THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

### الماضي البسيط

1- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد

- She **visited** London in 2010.

- I **was** in Alexandria a month ago.

- At the age of seven, my parents **took** me to Jordan.

2- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثين متتابعين في الماضي .

- When he **had** an idea, he **wrote** a short story.

- I **went** to the park and **met** my friends.

3- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي و غير مستمرة الآن.

- I **played** tennis every day **when I was** younger.
- I **always ate** breakfast before I **went** to school.
- She **cooked** lunch **every day last week.**

4- يعبر عن الحقائق الماضية وعن الأفعال المنتهية (الموتى) وعن الحدث الثانى :

- Shakspeare **wrote** Hamlet

- Colombus **discovered** America.

- ملحوظة هامة : نستخدم الماضى البسيط و ليس الماضى المستمر إذا كان الفعل يعبر عن حالة. ( be )

- I **saw** Ali **while** he **was** at the sports club.

(NOT: was-being)

5- يعبر عن سرد الاحداث فى الماضى مع : first, then, next , at last, finally, ....

- Ali **found** a bag ,then he **went** to the police station.

6- يستخدم لوصف حدث استمر لفترة فى الماضى ولكنه غير موجود الآن

- She **lived in Tokyo for seven years.**

- They **were** in London from Monday to Thursday of last week.

7- فى الحالة الثانية من (If) الشرطية.

- **If** he **helped** us, we **would win.**

8- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ليعبر عن أحداث مستبعدة أو مستحيلة الحدوث فى المضارع أو المستقبل.

1- I wish + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- I wish mum wasn't ill.

- I wish the Egyptian team played well.

2- It's time + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- It's time he paid the bill.

- It is time father arrived.

2- I 'd rather + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- I would rather she helped him.

- I'd rather Ali didn't come.

يستخدم الماضى البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

yesterday - ago - last.... - in the past - once / once upon a time - ذات مرة - one day - in

2007 – from + سنة + to + سنة – When I was.....

- How long ago = When - for

- I last ate fish when I was in Alex.

~~~~~

### اعتاد أن used to + inf.

يستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف فى الماضى والحاضر :

- I **used to eat** breakfast before I **went** to school.

- He **used to swim** every day. Now he **doesn't** ( swim ).

- He **used to be** late all the time. Now, he **isn't** ( late ).

**didn't use to + مصدر**

وفى حالة النفي نستخدم:

- I **didn't use to** play computer games, but now I do.

**did + use to + فاعل + مصدر**

وفى حالة السؤال نستخدم:

- Did you use to walk to school?

- Where did you use to live?

يستخدم **no longer** بدلا من **used to** ويأتى بعدها الفعل فى المضارع البسيط:

- He **used to smoke.** = He **no longer smokes.**

يستخدم **any more / any longer** بدلا من **used to** مع نفي الفعل فى المضارع البسيط وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة:

- He **used to smoke.** = He **doesn't smoke any more.**

**used to = It was my habit to ..... / I was in / got the habit of .....**

كما يمكن التعبير عن عادة فى الماضى باستخدام (was / were used to v.ing).

- I **was used to eating** breakfast before I **went** to school.

~~~~~



**THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE****الماضي المستمر****Form****was / were + V. ing.....**

- Ali (he) **was reading** a story. - Aya and Heba (They) **were cooking** lunch.  
 1- يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا لفترة أو في وقت محدد في الماضي  
 - **Between six and half past six this morning**, I **was having** breakfast.  
 - Tarek **was eating** dinner **at noon yesterday**.  
 - I **was travelling** to Cairo **at eight o'clock ( yesterday ) this morning**.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية :

- **all day yesterday = the whole day yesterday** بينما **as** - بينما **just as** - في اللحظة التي **when** - عندما **all the time** طوال اليوم **at noon** طوال الوقت **yesterday morning / at noon**

- 2-- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع كلمات مثل **(While / when / As / Just as)** للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي البسيط

**1-While / As / When / Just as** (الحدثان تقاطعا) ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر (فاعل)While I **was sleeping**, a thief **entered** the house.= As I **was sleeping**, a thief **entered** the house.- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع **While / when / As / Just as** للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي**2-(While / As / When / Just as) .... ماضي مستمر ... , ... ماضي مستمر** (الحدثان لم يتقاطعا)**-(While / As / Just as)** my mother **was making** the dinner, I **was looking after** my sister.- **While I was studying**, my father **was reading**.- **While she was walking** in the street, she **met** one of her old friends.- إذا لم يأتي بعد **while** فاعل يأتي بعدها **(v.ing)**- **While playing**, I fell down.**Choose**

- While (playing – he was playing ) football, he scored a goal.

- While (playing – he was playing ) football, Ali was studying English.

- يمكن استخدام **during** بدلا من **while** و يأتي بعدها **noun**- **While** he **was playing** the game, he got hurt.- **During the game**, he got hurt. = - He got hurt **during** the game.- **During the party**, I met an old friend.- **During my lunchtime**, the phone rang.**When** (فاعل) ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط**When** (فاعل) ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمريمكن أن يأتي بعد **when** ماضي بسيط ثم ماضي مستمر أو العكس حسب المعنى :- I was studying English **when** the lights went out.- The lights went out **when** I was studying English.- **When** I was having a shower , the phone rangيمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** في الماضي البسيط :

- يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** في الماضي البسيط إذا كانا متتابعين و لم يقطع احدهما الآخر

• **When** he **arrived** , he **found** the door locked.

- يمكن استخدام **On** بدلا من **when** و يأتي بعدها **V. ing** أو اسم

- **On arriving / his arrival**, he **found** the door locked.

-الفعل بعد **and** يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل الذي يسبقها:

• He **was writing** a letter **and listening** to some music.

□ لاحظ عدم استخدام **to Be** في الماضي المستمر:

• **While / When** I **was** at school, I **worked** to a plan.

~~~~~

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **because** ماضى مستمر و الفعل الآخر ماضى بسيط :

- Magdy **couldn't hear** the phone **because** he **was having** a shower.

~~~~~

كما عادة لا نستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التي تصف حالة، شعور، حاسة، رأى، فهم، ادراك ، ملكية ولكن نستخدم معها ماضى بسيط لأنها تعبر عن حالة ثابتة ودائمة :

- لاحظ عدم استخدام الأفعال الدالة على الحالة في الماضي المستمر.

- She (**seemed – was seeming**) ill when I **visited** her.

- While I **was** at home, someone **knocked** on the door. (NOT: **was-being**)

لاحظ : لا يستخدم **V.To.Be** في الاستمرار ولكن نكتفى بـ **was / were** فقط .

أفعال الحواس قد تأتي في الاستمرار اذا جاءت بمعنى مؤقت و متغير مثل:

- **Where are you?** - **I'm tasting** the food. - **Why are you smelling** the food?

~~~~~

- هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بـ **(V.ing)** و تستخدم بدلا من جملة كاملة مبنية للمعلوم.

- **As Sara was walking** to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.

- **Walking to town** yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.

- **As Rami was running down** the road, he fell over and hurt his back.

- **Running down the road** , Rami fell over and hurt his back

~~~~~

~~~~~

## Mr El Sebaei Grammar Exercises تمارين الوحدة الأولى Mr El Sebaei

1- I (**have seen – saw – would see – was seen**) him a few days ago.

2- (**Are – Is – Did – Does**) you use to play with dolls?

3- I once used to ..... the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.

a) reading b) read c) was reading d) had read

4- My last e-mail (**send – was sending – has sent – was sent**) to six of my friends

5- I (**had gone – have gone – went – go**) to the museum in 2015.

6- She (**writes – has written – wrote – will write**) poetry for 7 years, but now she writes novels.

7- When she (**is – was – was being – has been**) seven, she wrote a poem which won a prize.

8- This film (**directed – had directed – was directed – was directing**) by Thomas Wilson.

9- My mother made me a cake. It { **was tasting – tasted – would taste – had tasted** } of lemons.

10- At the age of seven, my parents (**are taking – took – take – were taking**) me to Jordan.

11- He (**gave – was given – has given – had given**) a prize for a drawing of an animal.

12- What games did you (**using – used – are used – use**) to play with your friends?

13- He (**didn't use to – isn't used to – used to – uses to**) need much sleep, but he does now

14- Our block of flats (**was built – build – has been built – was building**) five years ago.

- 15-I **(was starting – have started – am starting – started)** this school in 2016.
- 16-When I was younger, I used **(to play – play – playing – played)** tennis with my friend
- 17-He used to be a driver but nowadays he **( doesn't – wasn't – isn't – didn't ).**
- 18- At six o'clock yesterday evening, I **(was watching – am watching – have been watching – watch)** TV.
- 19- What ..... when I called you? You sounded very busy.  
**a) did you do      b) do you do      c) had you done      d) were you doing**
- 20- While she ..... her homework, my sister was listening to music.  
**a) did      b) was doing      c) is doing      d) would do**
- 21- Yesterday evening, we .....for our English test when all the lights went out.  
**a) had revised      b) were revising      c) revised      d) revising**
- 22- What ..... at eight o'clock yesterday evening?  
**a) were you doing      b) did you do      c) you were doing      d) do you do**
- 23-Someone phoned me while I **( cook-was cooked-was cooking-am cooking )** the dinner .
- 24-While my car....., I went shopping. **(was mending -was being mended -had mended)**
- 25-While my mother was doing the washing up, my baby sister ..... after.  
**a) was looking      b) has been looked      c) was being looked      d) had looked**
- 26- While **( played -playing -was playing -had played )** football , he fell down.
- 27-While finishing one story, he ( thinks-was thinking- thought) of another one  
**a) thinks      b) is thinking      c) was thinking      d) has thought**
- 28- The washing machine **(delivered - delivers – was delivered – had delivered)** while I was reading the newspaper.
- 29- While I **(have come – were coming – was coming – had come)** to school today, I saw an old friend.
- 30- At the age of seven, my **parents (are taking- took- take-were taking )** me to Jordan.
- 31-Nesma first **(met – was meeting-had met-meets )**her friend when she was at primary school.
- 32.The writer wrote his first story when he **(was being-was-has been-had been )** at university.
33. Crossing the street , he .....on the ice and broke his arm.  
**a) was slipping      b) slipped      c) had slipped      d) was slipped**
34. **(On- Without- Despite-While)** seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.
- 35- The room **(was cleaning – was being cleaned – would clean)** when the earthquake happened.
- 36-While my car..... I went shopping. **(was mending -was being mended -had mended)**
- 37-While my mother was doing the washing up, my baby sister ..... after.  
**a) was looking      b) has been looked      c) was being looked      d) had looked**
- 38- While ..... for the school bus, I met one of my old friends.  
**a being waited      b am waiting      c was waiting      d waiting**
- 39- While Samir was very busy doing his homework, his sister ..... to loud music; he wasn't able to concentrate.  
**a had listened      b was listening      c is listening      d listened**
- 40- I no longer play tennis as I .....  
**a am used      b am used to      c used to      d used**
- 41- What..... at 7 pm yesterday?  
**a you were doing      b have you done      c were you doing      d did you do**
- 42.I'd rather you ..... this car. It's a bargain.  
**a. buy      b. to buy      c. bought      d. will buy**
- 43.I entered the office and looked around. Most people ..... at their office.  
**a) were working      b) worked      c) had worked      d) used to work**
- 44.When I lived in London, I ..... through the park every day.  
**a) walk      b) had walked      c) walked      d) was walking**
- 45-.....I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends

- a) While                      b) Although                      c) Because                      d) On
46. This car ..... to me three years ago.  
a) was belonging                      b) belongs                      c) has belonged                      d) belonged
47. Amany phoned me while the dinner .....  
a) was cooking                      b) cooked                      c) cooks                      d) was being cooked
48. While I ..... at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.  
a) was being                      b) had been                      c) was                      d) am being
49. I ..... a noise while I was studying last night.  
a) hearing                      b) heard                      c) was hearing                      d) heard
50. When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she .....  
a) was screaming                      b) had screamed                      c) screamed                      d) will scream
51. I couldn't open the door as I ..... a shower.  
a) had had                      b) was having                      c) had                      d) has had

### امتحانات ثانويه عامه

- 1- .....he was a student, he was writing short stories.  
a. After                      b. As soon as                      c. While                      d. On
2. Someone next door... heavy metal music all night long. I didn't get a wink of sleep.  
a. was playing                      b. has played                      c. had been played                      b. has been playing
3. Although the police suspected him, he was able to prove that he..... when the crime was committed.  
a. was working                      b. worked                      c. had worked                      d. had been working
4. When I was in Sharm El-Sheikh, I .....a lot.  
a. have sunbathed                      b. was sunbathing                      c. would sunbathe                      d. sunbathed
- 5..... reaching the airport, Ali found out that he had left one of his suitcases at home.  
a. On                      b. While                      c. When                      d. Despite
- 6- While ..... the new plan, Sami noticed that it was too long.  
a. revise                      b. revising                      c. revises                      d. revised
7. While I .....home, I saw some of my friends.  
a. walking                      b. was walking                      c. had walked                      d. walk
- 8.....feeling the pain of the injection, she gave a spontaneous cry.  
a. After                      b. In                      c. Before                      d. On
- 9-They.....to spend the feast with us every year until we moved.  
a. use                      b. are used                      c. have used                      d. used
- 10.I'd rather you..... that car last year. It was a bargain.  
a. buy                      b. had bought                      c. bought                      d. to buy

### Advanced Exercises

#### 1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

- 1-My dad ( was going-had gone-went-used to ) on business trips to Japan four times last year.
- 2- During..... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.  
a) my walk                      b) was walking                      c) walks                      d) walking
- 3-Yesterday, we were discussing the new project and ( have-had-having-being having ) a good time.
- 4- I ( used to-didn't use to -was used to -was using ) the cold weather of Russia.
- 5-Our school have more equipment than they ( used to- used to be-was used to -uses )
6. What time. ....yesterday morning?  
a. you got up                      b. were you getting up                      c. did you get                      d. had you got
7. No one even noticed when I arrived home. They..... the final match on TV.  
a. have been watching                      b. had been watching                      c. were watching                      d. had watched
8. Writing a lot of novels, Naguib Mahfouz..... famous as a novelist.  
a. is becoming                      b. had become                      c. became                      d. become
- 9- Although the police suspected him, he was able to prove that he ....when the crime was committed.  
a) was working                      b) worked                      c) had worked                      d) had been working
- 10- Someone next door ..... heavy metal music all night long. I didn't get a wink of sleep.

a) was playing      b) has played      c) had been playing      d) has been playing

11- [After- On While- As soon as ] he was a student, he was writing short stories.

~~~~~

1-I've read the book, (but – so – if –though) I haven't seen the film yet.

2.(As – Although – So – However) I have not seen him before, I knew who he was.

3. (But – Although – Despite – As) being 60 years old, Ali still plays football.

4. (Though – Yet – so – Despite) being very tired, I continued working.

5. (But – In spite of – Although – So) we ran fast, we missed the bus.

6.We enjoyed our holiday (yet – although - in spite – despite) the rain.

7.(Despite – in spite – Though – However) the pain in his leg was great, he completed the marathon.

8. (However – As - Though – Despite) hard he worked, he failed to pass the exam.

9.The holiday was great (although – despite – as) the hotel wasn't very nice.

10. (In spite of – Although – As – But) the difficulty, he could solve the problem.

11. Well(though - in spite of- because - as) he studied , he got low marks.

12. (Despite – Whatever – However – As) the company he has , he was poor

13. (Because – Therefore - In spite of – However) his illness, he went to school

14.I went to the bank this morning (so – although – because – and) I wanted to take out some money.

15.I've felt really tired today, (because – so – despite – although) I went to bed early last night.

16.The play was a great success (thanks to – because – due – although) the effort and commitment of everyone involved.

17. (Although – Despite – So – Because) you've done such a good job, I'm giving everyone a 10% bonus.

18.We asked Philip to come with us, (as – so – although – due to) he knew the road.

19.He had to retire (as – while – when - because of) ill health.

20. Flight BA213 has been delayed (during - owing – because – as) to fog.

21. We succeeded (owing - through – although – because) hard work.

22. (Although – Because – Owing – On account) I can't help admiring the man's courage, I do not approve of his methods.

23. (Although – Because – As – Despite) repeated assurances that the product is safe, many people have stopped buying it.

24. (Though – Despite – In spite – Because) she's almost 40, she still plans to compete.

25. She went to Spain (although - despite – because – due) the fact that her doctor had told her to rest.

26.Although (written – write – wrote – had written) in simple English, he couldn't understand the letter.

27. (Because of – So – As – In spite) not having any money, he couldn't buy a bike.

28. (In spite – Although – As – Despite) the noise outside, I went to sleep immediately.

29. Ali as well as the girls ( am- were- was –had ) a difficult problem.

30. Neither of the girls ( had- have- were-was ) at school yesterday.

31.Not only ( did- had- was- does ) Ali come to school but also he met his friends.

32.He played very well (so –because-although-so that) he could win the cup.

33.As well as ( choosing- chosen- being chosen- chooses) the best player, he was given a valuable prize.

34..(Although – As– So – Despite) his father was a teacher, his family was wealthy

35..He was unhappy at school (though- because- so- but) he was regularly bullied.

36..(Although – Owing to – So – Despite) being known as a difficult man, I got on very well with him.

37..The machine is old( as- therefore-but-despite) I don't expect it to work well.

38. (Because-Through- Due to- As) your carelessness, the documents were lost

39. ( In spite of – Due to- Because-So)being old, the car still runs well.

40. Strange (as- so-although-being) it may seem, I like housework

42. However (hard – hardly-harden-hardships)he studied, he got low marks..

43. He left secretly (to be seen- not to be seen-so that he could see) by anyone..

44.. The project won't continue (so-though-due to-since) there is a lack of money

45.- We didn't enjoy the day (because of- as-however-but) the awful weather

46-He travelled abroad( to- so-so that-but) he could find a good job..



- 47.(As – Despite – Due to – So) the Internet, you can shop from home  
 48-He admitted that he ( arrived-has arrived- had arrived will arrive) late the night before.  
 49-She (exclaimed -refused -asked –explained) that she was hoping to come and see me the following week.  
 50-He asked me if I knew that his sister ( is- has been- had been- will be) ill.  
 52-We wanted to know what .....of his idea.  
 a-they thought b – did they think c – had they thought d – will they think  
 53-She wondered if ..... anything interesting at the weekend.  
 a-was I doing b – I was doing c – had I been doing d – I am doing  
 55-I admitted that I ..... any plans.  
 a- don't have b – am not having c – didn't have d- doesn't have  
 56-He denied ..... at the scene of the crime  
 a- to be b– had been c – was d – being

### PRESENT PERFECT

### المضارع التام

**Form:** **have / has + P.P. ....**

- I **have tidied** my bedroom. - Ali **has played** tennis for an hour.  
 1- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود في الحاضر.
- Ahmed **has hurt** his leg, so **he can't play football today**  
 - She **has cleaned** the kitchen. (The kitchen is clean now)  
 - He **has broken** his leg. (He can't walk easily)  
 - Ahmed **has hurt** his leg, **so he can't play football today.**
- 2- يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن الخبرات السابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها عادة مع (ever) و (never)  
 - I **have never eaten** Chinese food. - **Have you ever ridden** a camel?  
 - **Have you ever met** anyone famous?  
 - I **have never flown** on a plane. **Have you ever tried** snorkelling?  
 3- يعبر عن حدث تم في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثه. وعند التحديد نستخدم ماضي بسيط :  
 - She **has polished** her shoes. - He **has fed** the sheep.  
 - Ahmed **has been** to many countries, but he **hasn't visited** England yet.  
 لاحظ الاختلاف الثانيه تم تحديد الزمن لذلك استخدمنا ماضي بسيط  
 - She **has polished** her shoes. - She **polished** her shoes **yesterday.**  
 4- يدل المضارع التام على حدث متكرر ( عدد ما تم انجازه ) ( أى أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدوث مرة أخرى ) :  
 - Ronaldo has scored **a hundred goals.** (He can score more.)  
 - She has been to the cinema **twice this week.** (and the week isn't over yet.)  
 - I have been to France **three times.**  
 - لكن إذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعنى ذلك أن الحدث توقف :  
 - He **wrote** 46 novels. (He stopped writing. / he died)  
 • I'm sure I **haven't seen** this man **before.** 5- يستخدم إذا انتهت الجملة بكلمة before :  
 • I'm sure I **haven't seen** this man **before.**  
 يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية:  
**Just / already / yet / so far / ever / never / lately / recently**  
**/ since / for / so far / up till now**  
 ملاحظات  
 - لاحظ أن ever / never / just / already تأتي بين have / has والتصريف الثالث PP.  
 - I **have just written** the letter. - He **has already eaten** his lunch.  
 ♦ يمكن أن تأتي **already** في نهاية الجملة:  
 • Twenty million people **have seen** the film **already.**  
 - ♦ نستخدم **already** في الأسئلة.  
 - **Have you already written** to John?  
 الاختلاف بين ( **already - just** ) في الجملة:  
 • I **have just finished** the homework. • = I finished the homework a moment ago.



- **I've already done** the job. • = I did the job two hours ago.

**Choose:** The plane has ( already – just ) flown . I can see it in the sky.

لا يمكن استخدام (ever) في السؤال وفي الإثبات في الجمل التي تتضمن صفة درجة ثلاثة أو رقم ترتيبى

- Have you ( ever – never ) seen a real lion ?
- This is **the strangest match** I have ever watched.
- This is **the most interesting film** I've ever watched.

لاحظ استخدام **ever** في السؤال و **never** في الإجابة :

- Have you **ever** travelled by plane? • No, I have **never** travelled by plane.

تستخدم بشرط أيضا قبل صفه المقارنه وقبل **such**

- I have **never** watched a **more interesting** film **than** this one.
- I have **never** met a taller boy **than** Ali.
- I have **never** watched **such an interesting** film **like** this one.

لا تستخدم **yet** في نهاية الأسئلة لأن الحدث لم يتم و الجمل المنفية

- They **haven't eaten lunch yet**.
- **Has he arrived yet?**

وإذا تم الحدث نستخدم **already** وليس **yet** في نهاية السؤال

- Have you finished the test ( yet – already )? – You are quick.
- Have you finished the test ( yet – already )? – You should hurry.

- He came late, **yet** he attended the meeting. ملحوظه **yet** بمعنى لكن او مع ذلك

لا تستخدم كل من ( lately / recently ) بنفس الطريقة في السؤال

- Has Salah scored goals **lately** / **recently**? في النفي ( lately ) في الإثبات و ( recently ) - يفضل استخدام

- She **has moved** to a new house **recently**. - He **hasn't phoned** me **lately**.

لا نستخدم ( has / have been to ) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد أما ( has / have gone to ) ذهب لمكان وما زال هناك (لم يعد)

- My sister **has gone** to school. (She is still at school now.)
- My sister **has been to** the cinema. (She isn't there now).

لا يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و ما زال مستمرا حتى الآن مع ( since ) و ( for )

- Mona **has studied** English **for** ten years. - We **have been** at this school **since** 2012.
- I **have lived** in Tanta **since** 1984 (= and I still do.)
- Susan **hasn't finished** her homework **yet**. (= and she is still doing it.)

- يأتي بعد **since** نقطة زمنية تحدد بداية الحدث أما **for** يأتي بعدها مدة هذا الحدث.

Since (+ بداية المدة )	For + مدة كاملة
Last (week- month – year – Monday - night 1995 / 5 o'clock / Sunday The /this morning –yesterday Lunch time – spring – then His arrival/ childhood/death- Marriage/ birthday I /He/she was...../the age of..... Since the last + اسم since the last visit-the last holiday	a while –a moment-a second-a minute- an hour -a day- a night- a week – a month – a season- a year ( five days /ten years ) a long time / ages ) / a decade / / ever –more than-some time مدة زمنية + the last/past the last week/month. For وتاتي مع كل ما ينتهي ب s و a/an

- We **have owned** this house **since** 1988 - He **has known** the same friends **for** 3years.

- كما يأتي بعد **since** أيضا اسم يدل علي وقت معلوم مثل

- lunch / lunchtime / his childhood / her wedding / their arrival.....

- She **has stayed** her **since her marriage**. - He **has known** the same friends **since his childhood**.

- I **haven't seen** him **since** he **left** for Cairo - الجملة التي تأتي بعد **since** تكون زمن الماضي بسيط.

- إذا كان التحويل من (for) إلى (since) صعب (أي المدة لا يمكن تحويلها إلى نقطة زمنية) نستخدم التركيبة التالية

**It ( is - has been ) مدة since ماضى بسيط**

- He **hasn't travelled** for ages. (since)

- It is ages since he travelled.

He hasn't studied for a long time. ( since )

- It is a long time since he studied.

- كما يستخدم المضارع التام إذا وجدنا الجملة ما يلي

- It's/This is the first (second...) time...

- It's the first time I have been to this place.

- It's (This) is the only...

- This is the only play I have seen.

- In the last few years / months.....

- Egypt **has changed** a lot **in the last few years**.

- In recent years

- It **has not rained** in the Western Desert **in recent years**.

- Over the ages / over the years....

- The earth **has become** more crowded **over the ages**.

~~~~~

**Have/has been +V- ing**

**المضارع التام المستمر من**

ويُعبّر عن حدث بدأ واستمر حتى الآن

• **I've been studying** all day.

لتوضيح نتيجة موقف في الحاضر

• **I've been running**. That's why I'm so tired.

• **It's been raining** a lot recently

ويُعبّر عن حدث استمر بشكل منتظم من الماضي الى الحاضر

• **I've been learning** Greek for the last few months.

ويستخدم المضارع التام المستمر غالباً مع:

**All day / all week/ all afternoon/ all evening / for...now/for..not yet/ since / lately / recently / over the last few months**

لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام فقط:

• My uncle **has joined** the army.

1- عندما لا يستغرق الفعل وقتاً طويلاً

• Mona **has sent** me **three e-mails**.

2- عندما نذكر عدد المرات التي قمنا فيها بالحدث

3- في حالة وجود أفعال الحواس و الشعور والادراك لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة:

• **I've known** Yara since kindergarten.

**Mr El Sebaei Grammar exercises** تمارين الوحدة الثانية **Mr El Sebaei**

**Choose the correct answer:**

1- Have you met the manager ( just - yet - ever - since ) ?

2- Dalia has practised her hobby ( since - for - yet - recently ) a long time.

3- Reham (visits - has visited - is visiting - visit ) London recently

4- They ( have been - have gone - had gone - gone ) to the USA. They are in Cairo now.

5- She ( has left - leaves - left - would leave ) for work already

6- Have you eaten all these bananas ( ever - never - already - since ) ?

7- Samir and Nagy ( were - have gone - have been - had been ) friends all their lives.

8- I have known him ( since - when - for - ago ) we joined the university.

9- Noha has ( already - yet - never - ever ) cleaned her room. It looks nice now.

10- Adel has graduated from university ( for - since - in - until ) 2003.

11- We have lived in Cairo since we ( have married - married - get married - marry )

12- The manager has met many people ( when - on - after - since ) he arrived at his office.

13- It's five hours since she ( has come - come - coming - came ) back home.

14- He ( eats - has eaten - had eaten - is eating ) three sandwiches up till now

15- This tree ( grew - grows - will grow - has grown ) phenomenally tall over the years.

16- They ( lived - have lived - were living - live ) in Luxor since 2015.

17- I can't phone my parents because I ( lost - was losing - have lost - lose ) my phone.

18- Nawal hasn't studied the present ( already - yet - ago - recent )

19- The plane ( left - already left - just left - has just left ). I can see it in the sky!

20- My uncle has lived abroad ( for - already - yet - since ) five years ago .

- 21-Hala cannot play tennis because she ( hurt – had hurt – hurts – has hurt ) her hand
- 22-Basel is not hungry because he ( has eaten – eats – is eaten – ate ) a big lunch.
- 23- We can't go home by bus because the last bus ( left – has left – leaves – had left )
- 24-Hamid's hair is wet because he ( has – had had – has had – had ) a shower.
- 25-Radwa doesn't know what flying is like as she ( flies – never flew – has never flown – not flies ).
- 26-What have you ( ever – yet – since – never ) done that you would like to do?
- 27-How long have you studied English ( ago – just – since – for )?
- 28-( For – Until – About – Since ) when have you lived in your home?
- 29- I have never eaten shrimps ( ever – by – before – after )
- 30 -Where is your father? My father ( has been – has gone – had gone – had been ) to Cairo.
- 31-Help! I ( lose- lost - have lost -am losing ) my wallet. How can I get home?
- 32-Last night I ( lose- lost- have lost -am losing ) my keys - I had to call my neighbour to let me in.
- 37- You look pale. ( Has anything happened – Will anything happen – had anything happened – Was anything happening ) to you ?
- 34-They ( learned- learn- have learned- had learned ) all the new words. They needn't worry about the test.
- 35- Many people ( grew – have grown – had grown – has grown ) up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.
- 36- I ( have just finished – just finish – had just finished – were just finishing ) one of his books, called My Father, An Egyptian Teacher.
- 37- She ( had written – have written – wrote – has written ) a book about why the writer became so successful.
- 38- Since he ( has become – have become – became – become ) famous in Egypt, people have translated his books into many languages.
- 39- His books ( influence – influenced – has influenced – have influenced ) children for many years.
- 40- It's two weeks since we last ( met – have met – had met – has met ).
- 41- This is the most interesting book I have ( never – ever – yet – just ) read .
- 42- Oh! I ( lost – lose – am losing – have lost ) my passport. What should I do?
- 43- Tamer ( had – has had – has – is having ) a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.
- 44- Adel ( hasn't contacted – didn't contact – doesn't contact – hadn't contacted ) me since he left Cairo.
- 45- I have never ( gone – been – seen – visited ) to the zoo before.
- 46- My cousin has lived abroad ( when – for – ago – since ) his childhood.
- 47- Belal is not here. He has ( gone – been – seen – visited ) to the dentist's.
- 48- Omar, ( has – have – did – had ) you read that book I recommended?
- 49- I ( hasn't – haven't – didn't – hadn't ) finished the book yet.
- 50- I started reading the story on Saturday but I have been busy ( since – for- ago yet ) then.
- 51- Shady has been very busy since he ( has begun – begin – began – begins ) working for that charity.
- 52- Nothing like this has ( never – lately – ever – just ) happened to me.
- 53- Have you ( ever tried – tried ever – never tried – tried never ) English food?
- 54- Many of today's great writers ( have also worked – also work – has also worked – also worked ) as teachers.
- 55- Michael Morpurgo is a famous English writer. He ( write – wrote – has written – is writing ) many books for children.
- 56- He started writing stories for children when he ( has been – have been – had been – was ) a primary school teacher.
- 57- Many of his most famous stories, ( have been made – be made – was made – made ) into successful films.
- 58- Ali ( isn't – didn't – wasn't – hasn't been ) hungry because he has eaten a big lunch.
- 59- My brother ( is going – will go – has gone – has been ) to Paris, he came back last week.
- 60- Since the computer was used in schools, remarkable progress in education ( has made – has been made – had made – had been made ).
- 61- My uncle ( is – will be – has been – is being ) to Germany lately.

- [illegible]

## Advanced Exercises

- 1- She is really a good friend and she ..... to send me a letter each month.  
a) never failed                      b) never fails                      c) is never failing                      d) had never failed
- 2- Generally speaking, I ... film reviews because I like to be open-minded when I go to the cinema.  
a) am not reading    b) don't read                      c) haven't read                      d) haven't been reading
- 3- I ( had left-have left- was leaving-am leaving ) my books in the class. Could you go and fetch them for me?
- 4- It is more than 20 years ( for - since- while-on ) the writer wrote a short story.
- 5- I have( yet-ever-all ready- recently ) sent him an e-mail; I expect him to send me a cheque soon.
- 6- I ( 've been making- 've made- 've been made- will make ) a cake. Would you like some?
- 7- Since his mother( was- has been- is- had been ) ill , he will clean the flat for her.
- 8- ( For - Since- While- On ) I started my job , I've met a lot of important people.
- 9- Nageib Mahfouz's books.....into many languages.  
a) translated                      b) were translated                      c) have been translated                      d) had been translated
- 10- It takes time to build( assistance -residence -confidence -doubt) when you learn a new skill.
11. One Thousand and One Nights ..... many times and on man continents.  
a. has told                      b. has been told                      c. told                      d. was telling
12. What have you..... that you would like to do?  
a. done ever                      b. ever done                      c. never done                      d. done never
13. How long have you studied English .....?  
a. since                      b. for                      c. ago                      d. yet
- 14.....have you lived in your home ?  
a. When                      b. Since how long                      c. For when                      d. Since when
15. Do you know what time Nada ..... the office ?  
a. have left                      b. had left                      c. left                      d. was left
16. Have you finished all the reports .....? You never let me down , Sama!  
a. already                      b. recently                      c. so far                      d. yet
- 17.I 'm starving..... I've eaten nothing for two days.  
a. before                      b. since                      c. so                      d. when
18. ....When have you lived here ?



a. For b. With c. From d. Since

19..... how long have you lived here ?

a. For b. With c. From d. Since

20. I've known tens of people since I .....here..

a. have been lived b. was lived c. have lived d. had lived

21- There has been a decrease in the number of applications since the report on environmental pollution.....in the newspaper.

a. has appeared b. was appeared c. appeared d. has been appeared

22- I have.....sent him an email I expect him to send me a cheque.

a. yet b. all ready c. recently d. ever

## Translation

### 3. Choose the correct translation:

**يجب أن يتحلّى بالصبر والصمود فى مواجهة مشاكلنا الاقتصادية الحالية.**

1. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problems.
2. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problems.
3. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the hand of our current economic problems.
4. We must be characterized by patience and steadfastness in the face of our current economic problem.

**يجب على شبابنا دفع عجلة التنمية من أجل مستقبل أفضل.**

1. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a better future.
2. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a better future.
3. Our youth should push the acceleration for development for a better future.
4. Our youth should push the acceleration of development for a bad future

**إن الشعب المصرى بأسره يرفض الرهاب والعنف وقتل الأبرياء.**

1. The Egyptian people as a whole reject terrorism, violence and the killing of innocent people.
2. The Egyptian people as a whole rejects terrorism, violence and the killing of innocent people.
3. The Egyptian people as a whole rejects tourism, violence and the killing of innocent people.
4. The Egypt people as a whole rejects terrorism, violence and the killing of innocent people.

**لقد أصبحت السياحة العمود الفقري لتطور الاقتصاد المصرى.**

1. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.
2. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egypt economy.
3. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.
4. Tourism has become the backbone of the development of the Egyptian economy.

**تهدف قوانين المرور الجديدة الى تحقيق انسياب المرور والحد من حوادث السيارات.**

1. The new traffic law aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.
2. The new traffic laws aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.
3. The new traffic laws aim to achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.
4. The new traffic laws aim for achieve the flow of traffic and reduce car accidents.

**تبذل الحكومة ما فى وسعها لرفع مستوى معيشة الفرد.**

1. The government do its best to raise the individuals' standard of living.
2. The government does its best to raise the individuals' standard of living.
3. The government does its best for raise the individuals' standard of living.
4. The government does its best to raise the individuals' standards of living.

**لقد أصبحت مياه الشرب مشكلة عالمية يمكن أن تؤدي الى حروب بين كثير من الدول.**

1. Drinking water have become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.
2. Drinking water has become a global problem that could not lead to wars between many countries.
3. Drinking water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between many countries.
4. Drinking water has become a global problem that could lead to wars between much countries.

**إن حسن استغلال مواردنا المائية هو هدف قومى يجب أن يتعاون الجميع من أجل تطبيقه.**

1. The good use of our water resources is a international goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.
2. The good use of our water resources are a national goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.
3. The good use of our water sources is a national goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.
4. The good use of our water resources is a national goal which everyone must cooperate to apply.

**تعتبر مصر واحة للمان الذى بعد الركيزة السياسية للاستقرار الاقتصادى والجماعى.**

1. Egypt is an oasis of safe, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.
2. Egypt is an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economy and social stability.
3. Egypt is an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.

4. Egypt are an oasis of safety, which is the mainstay of the economic and social stability.

ل يمكن أن نتجاهل دور المرأة على مدى الحال في تحقيق تقدم المجتمع.

1. We can ignore the role of women along generations in achieving society progress.
2. We can't ignore the rule of women along generations in achieving society progress.
3. We can't ignore the role of women along generations in achieving society progress.
4. We can't ignore the role of woman along generations in achieving society progress.

يعتبر ارتفاع الأسعار مشكلة معقدة ويمكن حلها في زيادة الإنتاج والصادرات.

1. The rises in prices is a complex problem and can be solved by increasing production and exports.
2. The rise in prices are a complex problem and can be solved by increasing production and exports.
3. The rise in prices is a complex problem and can be solved by increasing production and exports.
4. The rise in prices is a complex problem and can not be solved by increasing production and exports.

### Choose the right answer

-Our deserts are one of the chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems by increasing the cultivated land and constructing new industrial projects. New cities could grow up in these areas and lead to our economic development.

1. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا نقص دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى وتشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو في تلك المناطق وستؤدي الى النمو الاقتصادي
2. تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى و عدم تشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو في تلك المناطق وستؤدي الى النمو الاقتصادي
- 3- تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى وتشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة لا يمكن أن تنمو في تلك المناطق وستؤدي الى النمو الاقتصادي
- 4- تعد صحارينا واحدة من المصادر الرئيسية للثروة ولو أعطيناهم أهتماما بالغاً يمكننا زيادة دخلنا القومي وحل العديد من المشاكل عن طريق زرع الاراضى وتشبيد المشاريع الاقتصادية. فالمدن الجديدة يمكن أن تنمو في تلك المناطق وستؤدي الى النمو الاقتصادي

2. Thanks to modern inventions, life has become easy. One can go from one place to another in a car, by train or by plane. Modern means of transport have made it possible to enjoy travel.

1. لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
2. لقد أصبحت الحياة افضل بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء لا يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
3. لقد أصبحت الحياة افضل بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل الحديثة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..
4. لقد أصبحت الحياة صعبة بفضل الاختراعات الحديثة لان المرء يمكنه الان أن ينتقل من مكان لخر بالسيارة أو بالقطار أو بالطائرة فوسائل النقل القديمة جعلت من الممكن الاستمتاع بالسفر..

3- A telephone is a mixed-blessing. Sometimes you get the wrong number and so you get angry. Some impolite people may disturb you while you are eating or even sleeping. Long ago people used pigeons to send messages. They were lucky.

1. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطئ وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين
2. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الصحيح وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين
3. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطئ وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض المحترمين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الحمام لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين
4. إن التليفون نعمة ونقمة في ذات الوقت فأحيانا نحصل على الرقم الخاطئ وتغضب أو ربما يزعجك بعض الوقحين أثناء طعامك و ونومك. فلقد اعتاد الناس في سالف الزمان أن يستخدموا الانترنت لارسال الرسائل.. لقد كانوا فعل محظوظين

4. Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans. It saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons to be used for developing education and solving our problems.

- 1- السلام بين الامم ليس أمر ضرورى فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهذرة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- 2- السلام بين الامم أمر ضرورى فهو يعطى كل قاره الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهذرة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- 3- السلام بين الامم ليس أمر ضرورى فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهذرة على الحروب وعدم إنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات
- 4- السلام بين الامم أمر ضرورى فهو يعطى كل دولة الفرصة في تنفيذ خطط التنمية وتوفر الاموال المهذرة على الحروب وإنفاقها في تطوير التعليم وحل المشكلات



# Unit Two

## Vocabulary

### Her story

By: Mr El Sebael Atteya

|                          |                      |                            |                       |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Extract</b>           | مقتطف - مقتبس        | <b>inspire</b>             | يلهم - يشجع           | <b>break down</b>        | يتعطل - يثور          |
| <b>results</b>           | نتائج                | <b>inspiring</b>           | ملهم                  | <b>demonstrate</b>       | يوضح - يتظاهر         |
| <b>Viewer</b>            | مشاهد                | <b>inspiration</b>         | الهام                 | <b>society</b>           | مجتمع                 |
| <b>education</b>         | تعليم                | <b>biography</b>           | سيره ذاتيه            | <b>Class</b>             | درجه - فصل            |
| <b>speech</b>            | خطبه - كلام          | <b>qualities</b>           | صفات - سمات           | <b>arts</b>              | فنون - اداب           |
| <b>equality</b>          | المساواه             | <b>emergency</b>           | طواريء                | <b>nuclear power</b>     | طاقه نوويه            |
| <b>inequality</b>        | عدم المساواه         | <b>encourage</b>           | يشجع                  | <b>medical</b>           | طبي                   |
| <b>challenging</b>       | مثير للتحدي          | <b>encouragement</b>       | تشجيع                 | <b>goal</b>              | هدف                   |
| <b>stereotypes</b>       | نمطيه - سلبيه        | <b>responsible</b>         | مسئول                 | <b>research</b>          | بحث                   |
| <b>award</b>             | يمنح - جائزة         | <b>responsibility</b>      | مسئولية               | <b>treatment</b>         | علاج                  |
| <b>contribution</b>      | مساهمه - مشاركه      | <b>sensible</b>            | واع - منطقي           | <b>x-rays</b>            | اشعه اكس              |
| <b>expert in-on</b>      | خبير في              | <b>degree</b>              | درجه علميه - حراره    | <b>Available for</b>     | متاح                  |
| <b>physicist</b>         | عالم فيزياء          | <b>physics</b>             | فيزياء                | <b>atom</b>              | ذره                   |
| <b>prejudice</b>         | التعصب - التحامل     | <b>female</b>              | انثي                  | <b>metals</b>            | معادن                 |
| <b>qualify</b>           | يؤهل                 | <b>honour</b>              | شرف - فخر - كرم       | <b>impressive</b>        | مؤثر - جميل           |
| <b>role model</b>        | نموذج                | <b>the Middle East</b>     | الشرق الاوسط          | <b>Attendant</b>         | مقدم الخدمات          |
| <b>lecture</b>           | يلقي محاضرة - محاضره | <b>Persian</b>             | فارسي                 | <b>firsts</b>            | اولويات               |
| <b>lecturer</b>          | محاضر                | <b>archaeology</b>         | علم الآثار            | <b>court</b>             | محكمة - ساحه - ملعب   |
| <b>a training course</b> | دوره تدريبيه         | <b>archaeologist</b>       | عالم آثار             | <b>tournament</b>        | دوري                  |
| <b>fixed</b>             | ثابت - راسخ          | <b>sites</b>               | مواقع                 | <b>round</b>             | جوله                  |
| <b>symbol</b>            | رمز                  | <b>the First World War</b> | الحرب العالميه الاولى | <b>World Cup</b>         | كأس العالم            |
| <b>recognise</b>         | يتعرف علي            | <b>borders</b>             | الحدود                | <b>hold</b>              | يعقد - يقيم - يمسك    |
| <b>star</b>              | يمثل - يتألق         | <b>director</b>            | مدير                  | <b>competition</b>       | منافسه                |
| <b>unfair</b>            | ظالم - غير عادل      | <b>Antiquities</b>         | اثار                  | <b>dream</b>             | حلم                   |
| <b>unreasonable</b>      | غير معقول            | <b>artefacts</b>           | اعمال يدويه           | <b>graduate</b>          | حريج - يتخرج          |
| <b>knowledge</b>         | معرفه                | <b>remain</b>              | يبقي - بقايا          | <b>musician</b>          | موسيقيار              |
| <b>confident</b>         | واثق                 | <b>queen</b>               | ملكه                  | <b>flood</b>             | فيضان - يفيض          |
| <b>planet</b>            | كوكب                 | <b>achieve</b>             | يحقق                  | <b>apologise</b>         | يعتذر                 |
| <b>Name after</b>        | يسمي باسم            | <b>achievement</b>         | انجاز                 | <b>death</b>             | الموت                 |
| <b>scholarship</b>       | منحه دراسيه          | <b>celebrate</b>           | يحتفل                 | <b>obtain</b>            | يحصل علي              |
| <b>realise</b>           | يدرك - يفهم          | <b>celebration</b>         | احتفال                | <b>President</b>         | الرئيس                |
| <b>face</b>              | يواجه - وجه          | <b>remarkable</b>          | ملحوظ - مميز          | <b>First Class Order</b> | وسام من الدرجة الأولى |
| <b>mathematics</b>       | رياضيات              | <b>consider</b>            | يعتبر                 | <b>private clinic</b>    | عياده خاصه            |
| <b>stem school</b>       | مدرسه متفوقين        | <b>translate</b>           | يترجم                 | <b>patients</b>          | مرضي                  |
| <b>Technical</b>         | فني                  | <b>Engineering</b>         | هندسه                 | <b>treat</b>             | يعالج - يعامل         |
| <b>defv</b>              | يرفض - يتحدي         | <b>Engineer</b>            | مهندس                 | <b>retire</b>            | يتقاعد                |
| <b>alone</b>             | بمفرده               | <b>attend</b>              | يحضر                  | <b>invention</b>         | اختراع                |
| <b>straw</b>             | قش                   | <b>burning</b>             | احتراق                | <b>spark</b>             | يلمع - بريق           |
| <b>natural fuel</b>      | وقود طبيعي           | <b>produce</b>             | ينتج                  | <b>confidence</b>        | ثقه                   |
| <b>generate</b>          | يولد                 | <b>electricity</b>         | كهرباء                | <b>innovate</b>          | يبدع                  |
| <b>grow up</b>           | ينش ينمو             | <b>difficulties</b>        | الاختلاف              | <b>special</b>           | خاص                   |
| <b>Commission</b>        | لجنه - مهمه - عموله  | <b>a teen</b>              | مراهق                 | <b>bubble</b>            | فقاعه                 |
| <b>Grand Slam</b>        | بطوله تنس            | <b>professional</b>        | محترف                 | <b>success</b>           | نجاح                  |
| <b>profile</b>           | ملف شخصي             | <b>major</b>               | رئيسي                 | <b>beat</b>              | يهزم                  |
| <b>interview</b>         | مقابله               | <b>proud of</b>            | فخور ب                | <b>previous</b>          | سابق                  |

|                             |                      |                         |                 |                       |                        |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <b>heat</b>                 | الحراره - يسخن       | <b>improve</b>          | يحسن            | <b>conditions.</b>    | حالات - ظروف - شروط    |
| <b>mention</b>              | يذكر                 | <b>mental side</b>      | جانب عقلي       | <b>fans</b>           | مشجعين - معجبين        |
| <b>reaction</b>             | رد فعل               | <b>bring attention</b>  | يجلب الاهتمام   | <b>obstacles</b>      | عقبات                  |
| <b>attitude</b>             | اتجاه - رأي          | <b>activities</b>       | اشطه            | <b>fight</b>          | يحارب - يقاتل          |
| <b>decision</b>             | قرار                 | <b>gap</b>              | فجوة            | <b>clay courts</b>    | ملاعب ناشفه            |
| <b>honest</b>               | امين                 | <b>Superiority</b>      | افضليه          | <b>require</b>        | يتطلب                  |
| <b>assume</b>               | يفترض                | <b>powerlift</b>        | حمل اثقال       | <b>strength</b>       | قوه                    |
| <b>influence</b>            | يؤثر - تأثير         | <b>statement</b>        | عبارة - بيان    | <b>grade</b>          | درجة - صف دراسي        |
| <b>STEM subjects</b>        | مواد مدارس المتفوقين | <b>reasons</b>          | اسباب           | <b>classmates</b>     | زملاء دراسه            |
| <b>author</b>               | مؤلف                 | <b>swing</b>            | مرجيحه          | <b>adventures</b>     | مغامرات                |
| <b>tomboy</b>               | مسترجله              | <b>volunteer</b>        | متطوع           | <b>dirty</b>          | قذر                    |
| <b>naughty</b>              | مشاغب                | <b>trouble</b>          | متاعب           | <b>arque</b>          | يجادل                  |
| <b>miserable</b>            | بائس                 | <b>a while</b>          | لحظه            | <b>impatient</b>      | غير صابر               |
| <b>cross</b>                | غاضب - يعبر          | <b>disabled</b>         | معوق            | <b>kind</b>           | عطوف - نوع             |
| <b>cheerful</b>             | مرح                  | <b>heart</b>            | قلب             | <b>patient</b>        | صابر                   |
| <b>grumpy</b>               | غاصب                 | <b>cruel</b>            | قاسي            | <b>character</b>      | شخصيه                  |
| <b>percentage</b>           | نسبه                 | <b>majority</b>         | الاعليه         | <b>three-quarters</b> | ثلاثه اربع             |
| <b>graph</b>                | رسم بياني            | <b>raise</b>            | يرفع - يربي     | <b>alternative</b>    | بديل                   |
| <b>noticeable</b>           | يتم ملاحظته          | <b>surprising</b>       | مدهش            | <b>significant</b>    | مدهش                   |
| <b>difference</b>           | الاختلاف             | <b>European country</b> | بلد اوروبي      | <b>figures</b>        | ارقام - اشكال - شخصيات |
| <b>Netherlands</b>          | هولندا               | <b>conclusion</b>       | خاتمه - استنتاج | <b>region</b>         | منطقه                  |
| <b>economic development</b> | تنميه اقتصاديه       | <b>obvious</b>          | واضح            | <b>pattern</b>        | نموذج                  |
| <b>note</b>                 | ملاحظه - يلاحظ       | <b>reflect</b>          | يعكس            | <b>expect</b>         | يتوقع                  |
| <b>tips</b>                 | نصائح                | <b>clear</b>            | واضح - يبري     | <b>contact</b>        | يتصل - اتصال           |
| <b>Women's Day</b>          | عيد الام             | <b>repeat</b>           | يكرر            | <b>nature</b>         | طبيعه                  |
| <b>hide</b>                 | يخفي                 | <b>Last for</b>         | يستمر           | <b>organisers</b>     | منظمين                 |
| <b>Aim to</b>               | يهدف الي             | <b>Inferiority</b>      | عجز - قصور      | <b>Court (v)</b>      | يغازل - يعاكس          |
| <b>determination</b>        | عزم - تصميم          | <b>patience</b>         | الصبر           | <b>formula</b>        | وصفه                   |
| <b>obstacles</b>            | عقبات                | <b>challenges</b>       | تحديات          | <b>athletes</b>       | رياضيون                |

## Definitions

|                      |                                                                                  |                        |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>pharmacist</b>    |                                                                                  | دوري                   |
| <b>court</b>         | <b>A place where tennis is played</b>                                            | ملعب تنس - محكمة       |
| <b>tournament</b>    | <b>A sports competition involving a number of teams or players</b>               | دوري                   |
| <b>confident</b>     | <b>Feeling sure about your ability</b>                                           | واثق                   |
| <b>prejudice</b>     | <b>an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you don't have enough knowledge</b> | التحامل - الظلم انحياز |
| <b>lecture (v)</b>   | <b>talked to a group of people about a subject</b>                               | يلقي محاضره            |
| <b>lecturer</b>      | <b>a person teaches at university</b>                                            | محاضر                  |
| <b>importance</b>    | <b>the quality of being important</b>                                            | أهمية                  |
| <b>influence</b>     | <b>have an effect on the way someone or something develops or behaves</b>        | يؤثر - تأثير           |
| <b>determination</b> |                                                                                  | نيه - تصميم            |
| <b>honour</b>        | <b>something that makes you feel proud and happy</b>                             | شرف - فخر              |
| <b>contribution</b>  | <b>something you do help make something useful</b>                               | مساهمه - مشاركه        |
| <b>responsible</b>   | <b>sensible and able to be trusted</b>                                           | مسئول                  |
| <b>Role model</b>    | <b>a person young people can look up to and try to be like them</b>              | نموذج                  |

|                    |                                                                                                                    |                           |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>stereotype</b>  | a <b>fixed idea</b> about what a person or thing is like                                                           | صوره نمطيه -<br>تقليديه   |
| <b>qualify</b>     | <b>successfully finish</b> a <b>training course</b> so you can do a job .                                          | يؤهل                      |
| <b>patient</b>     | <b>Able to wait for a long time or accept annoying behaviour</b>                                                   | صبور                      |
| <b>physicist</b>   | <b>an expert in physics</b>                                                                                        | علم فيزياء                |
| <b>significant</b> | <b>important</b>                                                                                                   | مهم - رائج                |
| <b>round</b>       | <b>a stage in a sports completion</b>                                                                              | جوله - دوره<br>في الرياضة |
| <b>cross</b>       | <b>angry</b>                                                                                                       | غاضب                      |
| <b>grumpy</b>      | <b>Bad-tempered / easily annoyed</b>                                                                               | حاد الطبع -<br>سئ المزاج  |
| <b>rank</b>        | <b>The position or level that someone holds in an organization, especially in the police or the army, navy etc</b> | رتبه في                   |
| <b>overcome</b>    | <b>To successfully control a feeling or a problem.</b>                                                             | يتغلب علي                 |

### Expressions

|                                     |                         |                                      |                           |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>worried about</b>                | قلق بشأن                | <b>In conclusion</b>                 | يحفر بعمق                 |
| <b>the highest number of</b>        | اعلي عدد ل              | <b>a European country</b>            | بلد اوروبي                |
| <b>be related to</b>                | مختص ب                  | <b>obvious pattern to the</b>        | نموذج واضح                |
| <b>It is especially interesting</b> | شيق جدا                 | <b>Make eye contact</b>              | اتصال مرئي                |
| <b>The Egyptian Women's Day</b>     | عيد الام المصري         | <b>ask for equality at work</b>      | يطالب بالمساواة في العمل  |
| <b>Practise reading it aloud</b>    | يمارس القراءة بصوت عالي | <b>the rest of the class.</b>        | باقي الفصل                |
| <b>throwing stones at</b>           | يلقي بحجاره علي         | <b>quite cheerful</b>                | مرح الي حد ما             |
| <b>Inspire interest</b>             | يشير الاهتمام - يحفز    | <b>Do research into- on</b>          | يقوم ببحث في              |
| <b>A good natured girl</b>          | بنت ذات طبيعه جيده      | <b>A better natured girl</b>         | بنت ذات طبيعه جيده        |
| <b>take part in : share in</b>      | يشترك في                | <b>Qualify as</b>                    | يتأهل ك                   |
| <b>In a fix</b>                     | في ورطة موقف صعب        | <b>Qualify for</b>                   | يتأهل ل                   |
| <b>The event aims to remember</b>   | الحدث يهدف الي ان تتذكر | <b>the less developed countries</b>  | الدول الاقل تقدما         |
| <b>a very traditional society</b>   | مجتمع تقليدي            | <b>the less developing countries</b> | الدول الاقل نموا          |
| <b>Quite a traditional society</b>  | مجتمع تقليدي تماما      | <b>Women can get jobs in</b>         | السيدات يمكن ان يحصلن علي |
| <b>Cross with= angry with</b>       | غاضب من                 | <b>He is on business</b>             | في مهمه عمل               |
| <b>participate in</b>               | يشترك فـ                | <b>convince : persuade</b>           | يقنع                      |
| <b>Equal to</b>                     | مساو ل                  | <b>Search for</b>                    | يبحث عن                   |
| <b>have the honour of + v.ing</b>   | له الشرف                | <b>responsible for = in charge</b>   | مسئول عن                  |
| <b>name after</b>                   | يسمى باسم               | <b>be natural with</b>               | طبيعي مع                  |
| <b>Care about / for</b>             | يهتم بـ                 | <b>busy with + n او v.ing</b>        | مشغول في                  |
| <b>Reason for</b>                   | سبب لـ ( تفسير )        | <b>health problems</b>               | مشكلات صحية               |
| <b>Cause of</b>                     | سبب لـ ( نتيجة )        | <b>influential writer</b>            | كاتب مؤثر                 |
| <b>Expert in- on - at</b>           | تراث ثقافي              | <b>conduct ( do-carry out ) a</b>    | يجري استطلاع              |
| <b>Make contribution to</b>         | يقدم إسهامات في         | <b>Look up to</b>                    | يحترم                     |
| <b>Powered by</b>                   | يدار بواسطه             | <b>Look down upon</b>                | يحتقر                     |
| <b>encourage to</b>                 | يشجع علي                | <b>earn money</b>                    | يكسب مال                  |
| <b>discourage from</b>              | لا يشجع علي             | <b>take turns</b>                    | يتناوب الأدوار            |
| <b>reach / achieve goals</b>        | يحقق اهداف              | <b>continue to</b>                   | يستمر في                  |
| <b>score goals</b>                  | يحرز أهداف              | <b>reach a level</b>                 | يصل لمستوى معين           |
| <b>give goals</b>                   | يحدد أهداف              | <b>have much influence</b>           | له تأثير كبير             |
| <b>Set a goal</b>                   | يحدد هدف                | <b>available for</b>                 | متاح لـ                   |
| <b>win awards for</b>               | جوائز لـ                | <b>Special about</b>                 | مميز في                   |
| <b>A heart of stone</b>             | قلب حجر ( قاسي )        | <b>leave ..... dreaming</b>          | يتترك... يحلم             |
| <b>grow up</b>                      | يكبر / ينضج             | <b>lecture at ... about - on</b>     | يحاضر في ... عن           |

|                                     |                          |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>proud of اسم / to مصدر</b>       | <b>فخور بـ</b>           | <b>make a speech</b>                | <b>يعد خطاب</b>             |
| <b>focus on</b>                     | <b>تركيز / يركز</b>      | <b>Give a speech</b>                | <b>يلقي خطاب</b>            |
| <b>famous for = well-known for</b>  | <b>مشهور بـ</b>          | <b>important to / for</b>           | <b>مهم لـ</b>               |
| <b>make a plan for</b>              | <b>يعد خطة</b>           | <b>Do best</b>                      | <b>يبدل قصاري جهد</b>       |
| <b>recommend s..thing to s..one</b> | <b>يقترح شيء علي شخص</b> | <b>similar to</b>                   | <b>مشابه لـ</b>             |
| <b>communicate with</b>             | <b>يتواصل مع</b>         | <b>on the radio - on TV</b>         | <b>في الإذاعة</b>           |
| <b>Make treatment</b>               | <b>يصنع علاج</b>         | <b>show respect to</b>              | <b>يظهر الإحترام لـ</b>     |
| <b>Break down</b>                   | <b>يتعطل</b>             | <b>do a project about - on</b>      | <b>يقوم بعمل بحث عن</b>     |
| <b>Break down</b>                   | <b>يثور - ينتفض</b>      | <b>look forward to + v. ing</b>     | <b>يتطلع الي</b>            |
| <b>identical to</b>                 | <b>متطابق مع</b>         | <b>Well-behaved</b>                 | <b>حسن السلوك</b>           |
| <b>able to be trusted</b>           | <b>جدير بالثقة</b>       | <b>behave badly</b>                 | <b>يتصرف بطريقه سي</b>      |
| <b>Break down stereotypes</b>       | <b>يثور علي النمطيه</b>  | <b>have all the qualities to be</b> | <b>تديه كل الصفات</b>       |
| <b>Psychological side</b>           | <b>جانب نفسي</b>         | <b>Fight through the obstacles</b>  | <b>يحارب العقبات</b>        |
| <b>Spiritual side</b>               | <b>جانب روحي</b>         | <b>Believe in</b>                   | <b>يؤمن بـ</b>              |
| <b>Physical side</b>                | <b>جانب بدني</b>         | <b>Good-natuted</b>                 | <b>دسم الخلق</b>            |
| <b>Mental side</b>                  | <b>جانب عقلي</b>         | <b>Pay attention to</b>             | <b>يولي ابعطى اهتمام لـ</b> |
| <b>a cure for = treatment for</b>   | <b>علاج لـ</b>           | <b>generate electricity</b>         |                             |

### Derivatives

| <b>Verb</b>          |               | <b>Noun</b>           |                | <b>Adjective</b>    |                     |
|----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <b>influence</b>     | يؤثر علي      | <b>influence</b>      | تأثير          | <b>influential</b>  | ذو تأثير - ذو أهمية |
| <b>Contribute to</b> |               | <b>Contribution</b>   |                |                     | منضبط               |
| <b>advise</b>        |               | <b>advice</b>         | أهمية          | <b>advisable</b>    | هام                 |
| <b>confide</b>       | يأتمن         | <b>confidence</b>     | ثقة            | <b>confident</b>    | واثق                |
| <b>differ</b>        | يختلف         | <b>difference</b>     | اختلاف         | <b>different</b>    | مختلف               |
| .....                |               | <b>intelligence</b>   | ذكاء           | <b>intelligent</b>  | ذكي                 |
| <b>honour</b>        | يكرم - يوقر   | <b>honour</b>         | شرف - فخر      | <b>honourable</b>   | جليل - مبجل - موقر  |
| <b>affect</b>        | يؤثر          | <b>effect</b>         | تأثير          | <b>effective</b>    | مؤثر                |
| <b>inspire</b>       | يلهم          | <b>inspiration</b>    | الهام          | <b>inspired</b>     | <b>inspiring</b>    |
| <b>include</b>       | ينضم          | <b>inclusion</b>      | انضمام         | <b>included</b>     | متضمن               |
| <b>persuade</b>      | يقنع          | <b>persuasion</b>     | الإقناع        | <b>persuasive</b>   | مقنع                |
| <b>believe</b>       | يعتقد         | <b>belief</b>         | اعتقاد         | <b>believable</b>   | تصديقه              |
| <b>disable</b>       | يعجز عن العمل | <b>disability</b>     | عاقه           | <b>disabled</b>     | عاجز                |
| <b>graduate</b>      | يتخرج - خريج  | <b>graduation</b>     | التخرج         | <b>graduated</b>    | خريج                |
| <b>authorize</b>     | يأذن          | <b>authorization</b>  | تفويض          | <b>authorizable</b> | مصرح به             |
| <b>research</b>      | بحث - يبحث    | <b>researcher</b>     | باحث           |                     |                     |
| <b>invent</b>        | يخترع         | <b>invention</b>      | اختراع         | <b>inventable</b>   | قابل للاختراع       |
| <b>produce</b>       | ينتج          | <b>production</b>     | انتاج          | <b>productive</b>   | اتاجي               |
| <b>defy</b>          | يرفض - يتحدى  | <b>defiance</b>       | الرفض          | <b>defiant</b>      | رافض                |
| <b>Compete</b>       |               | <b>Competitor</b>     |                | <b>Competitive</b>  |                     |
|                      |               | Physicist - Physician | فيزيائي - طبيب |                     |                     |
| <b>Innovate</b>      | يبدع          | <b>Innovation</b>     | الابداع        | <b>Innovative</b>   | ابداعي              |

**Antonyms**

| Word                    | Antonym                 |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| honour                  | shame                   |
| grumpy                  | good-natured            |
| cruel                   | Kind- gentle & fatherly |
| naughty                 | well-behaved            |
| patient                 | impatient               |
| cross                   | uncross- cheerful       |
| majority                | minority                |
| agree                   | disagree                |
| prove                   | disapprove              |
| trust                   | suspect                 |
| responsible             | irresponsible           |
| famous                  | infamous                |
| professional ( paid )   | armature ( unpaid)      |
| encourage... to + v.ing | discourage from+ v.ing  |
| natural                 | artificial = man made   |
| confidence              | doubt                   |
| defy                    | approve                 |
| Considerate             | inconsiderate           |
| Death                   | life                    |
| result                  | cause                   |
| busy                    | free                    |
| Firsts                  | ends                    |
| Broad                   | narrow                  |
| usual                   | unusual                 |
| important               | unimportant             |
| intelligent             | stupid                  |
| win                     | lose                    |
| confident               | unconfident             |

**Synonyms**

| Word        | Synonyms                                                 |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| advice      | tips - counsel                                           |
| tournament  | Competition - contest quiz                               |
| confidence  | Trust -faith certainty creit                             |
| courage     | Bravery boldness                                         |
| equality    | Parity التكافؤ equivalence                               |
| grumpy      | Angry furious wroth                                      |
| prejudice   | Bias preconception intolarance                           |
| misery      | Poverty unhappiness                                      |
| inspiration | Revelation                                               |
| attitude    | Position situation behavior style method                 |
| responsible | accountable مسئول - liable مسئول قانوني answerable مسئول |
| award       | prize جايزه - distinction وسام                           |

|                              |                         |            |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| award                        | يمنح , grant يمنح       | يمنح جايزه |
| Alternative (بديل (صفة- اسم) | replacement (بديل (اسم) |            |

~~~~~

### Language Notes

2- هناك أسماء و أفعال لها نفس الشكل:

face	يواجه	- We have to <b>face</b> the facts.
face	وجه	- The ball hit him in the <b>face</b> .
lecture	يحاضر	- She <b>lectures</b> at the local university.
lecture	محاضرة	- The professor gave a <b>lecture</b> on the history of China.
influence	يؤثر علي	- His books have <b>influenced</b> children for many years.
influence	تأثير	- She has a lot of <b>influence</b> over his thinking.

2- عند اضافة ( ly ) للاسم يصبح صفة :

**fatherly** / ودود/عطوف / **neighbourly** / جبان **cowardly** / مرتبط بالألم **motherly** / **friendly** / أبوي **fatherly** / غير **unlikely** / محتمل **likely** / **lonely** / مميت **deadly** / أخوي **brotherly** / قبيح **ugly** / **silly** / **lovely** / حيوي/نشيط **lively** / رجولي **manly** / سماوي **heavenly** / محتمل

**In a + adj. + way/manner** ظرف حال - ظرف

• She spoke in a friendly way. • He behaved in a silly way.

My teacher treats me **in a fatherly way**. وهذا التعبير يستخدم كظرف

**3-Special** خاص ولتا يمتلكه الانسان: her drother's marriage was ( special- private ) occasion.

**Private** خاص ويمتلكه الانسان: There are a lot of ( private- special ) schools. They are expensive.

4 - **alone** = **solo** لوحده بدون مساعده **lonely** يشعر بالوحده **only** فقط

5- **like** ( مثل ) للتشبيه - A teacher is like the layers of the earth.

**as** ( ك ) للحقيقة - My father works as a teacher. He is a teacher

6-**inspire** ..... يلهم **aspire**..... يطمح **conspire**..... يتآمر

- A good teacher must **inspire** his students and **encourage** them.

7- **socirty** مجتمع **social** اجتماعي للاشياء **sociable** اجتماعي للانسان

- ( **Social** - **Sociable** ) people have a lot of real friends.

-There are a lot of ( **social** - **sociable** ) factors that affect our ( **society- community** )

8-**event** حدث هام **incident** حدث في قصة او فيلم **accident** حادثة

- He used to write about important events and people in the world.

- This is the best incident in the film.

9- **award** جائزة او يمنح جائزة او شهادة جامعية **reward** يكافئ او مكافأة ماديته

- He won many awards for his writing. - He was awarded his PHD last week.

- They rewarded him for his good behavior.

- He was ( rewarded – awarded ) his Ph D in 2003.

- The teacher gave me 10 pounds as a ( reward – award ) when I helped him.

-My father gave me chocolate as a ( reward – award ) when I was good.

10-

**win** (won / won) يفوز بـ / يكسب (يأتى بعده الشئ الذى نفوز به أو نكسبه)

**beat** (beat / beaten) يهزم / يتغلب على (يأتى بعده الشخص أو الفريق المهزوم)



**gain (gained / gained)**

يكتسب / يزداد

**earn (earned / earned)**

يكسب (من العمل الجاد)

**Ex: win:** (a medal ميدالية / a cup كأس / a race سباق / a competition مسابقة / a match / a game / an award / a prize)

**beat:** (someone شخص / a team فريق)

**gain:** experience معلومات / Knowledge معرفة

(weight وزن / height طول / speed سرعة) يزداد

**earn:** money / his living (من العمل الجاد) يكسب المال / عيشه

**10- whenever** حينما / عندما **Whenever she comes**, she brings some presents.

**whoever** أي شخص / أيما كان **Whoever commits a crime** should be punished.

**wherever** أينما / حيثما **Wherever he goes**, he makes friends.

**whatever** مهما / أي شيء **You can eat whatever you like.**

**11- ♣ be related to be = associated with = be connected with** مرتبط بـ / له علاقة بـ

- There are problems **which are associated with** cancer treatment.

**12- ♣ Grow up doing** something:

- Many people have **grown up reading** the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef.

♣ **Leave someone doing** something

- The head teacher **left him dreaming** about his life as a teacher.

**13- ♣ rest** فترة راحة ♣ **the rest (of)** بقية

- The doctors had told him **to have complete bed rest for a whole week.**

- what do you want **to do for the rest of your life?**

**14- ♣** لاحظ استخدام **most/least** مع الأفعال الآتية:

♣ What do you **most/least enjoy/like/love/hate** about..?

♣ What do you **enjoy/like/love/hate most/least** ... about..?

♣ What I **like/love/enjoy/hate most is/are**...

- What do you **most enjoy** about your job?

= What **do you enjoy most about** your job?

- **What I liked most were the beautiful beaches.**

**15 - contain** ( يحتوي علي ) CD-ROMs can **contain words**, music and pictures.

**-include** ( يتضمن لا يمكن فصله ) The list **includes** vegetables , fruits and books.

**-enclose** ( يرفق مع شيء ) I sent him an email and **enclosed my photo in it.**

**- consist of** ( يتكون من ) Pastry **consists of** flour , fat and water.

**16 -raise+** مفعول ( يرفع - يربي )

{ money مال / a question سؤال / your voice صوتك / cattle ماشية يربي

**- rise ( rose – risen )** يرفع / ينهض / تشرق / بدون مفعول

**-Prices rise** - He rose and left -

The sun rises

**-arise from ( arose – arisen )**

ينشأ

- Many problems will arise from this unwise decision .

**- arouse** يثير مشاعر

( شك – ريبة / doubt / شك / suspicion / تعاطف / feelings / sympathy )

**17- allow +** المصدر **+ to** مفعول

**& let +** المصدر **+ to** مفعول

**allow** ( بدون مفعول ) + v. ing

**make** ( مفعول ) + مصدر

**make** ( مفعول + صفة )

Choose : I allowed Ali ( help - to help - helping ) me.

I let Ali ( help - to help - helping ) me.

I allowed ( help - to help - helping ) me when I need help.

- The strict teacher makes his students ( respect - to respect ) him.

- Your success makes me happy.

18- **Decide** + to + المصدر

**Decide** + On + اسم

**Decide** + That + فعل + فاعل

& They **decided to move** into a new flat

& You should **decide on your goal** in life.

& They **decided that they should study** hard.

19- **Remember** + v. + ing

**Remember** + to + المصدر

يتذكر بنفسه

& **Remind** + مفعول + To + المصدر

& **Remind** + مفعول + of + v. + ing

يذكر شخص

20- **A number of** ( اسم جمع ) + فعل جمع

- **A number of** people in Egypt **are** illiterate .

- **The number of** ( اسم جمع ) + ( فعل مفرد )

- **The number of** people in Egypt **is** illiterate .

21- **invent**

يخترع شيء جديد

- **discover**

يكشف شيء مخبيء

- **explore**

يستكشف مكان نعرفه ولكن لم نزره

- Scientists ( invented- discovered ) a new cure for cancer.

- Gerham Bell ( invented- discovered ) the telephone in the last century.

- The ( invention- exploration ) of space has contributed to improving the aspects of life on the earth.

22- **percentage**

نسبة مئوية

- **percent**

في المائة = %

- **proportion**

نسبة

4: 6

- **rate**

معدل

23- **demonstrate**

يوضح

- **demonstrate**

يقوم بمظاهرة

Teachers made demonstrations to ask for pay rise but in vain

24. **Break down**

ينفض على إحطام

**Break down stereotypes**

يثور على النمطية

**Break into**

يفتح

**Break out**

تدلع / تشب

25- **biography**

سيره ذاتيه يكتبها شخص عن شخص

**biobiography**

سيره ذاتيه يكتبها شخص عن نفسه

26. **require**

يتطلب

**inquire**

يسأل

**acquire**

يكتسب

## READING

# People who inspire

## Firsts for Egyptian women

This week, we are **celebrating** three **remarkable** Egyptian women who **broke down stereotypes** and **prejudices**, demonstrating that women's place in **society** is **important and continues to grow**.

### Hilana Sedarous

1904–1998

Education: London Medical School

Hilana Sedarous was **the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor** in modern Egypt. She was born in Tanta and **was sent to** London in 1922 to study **mathematics** and medicine with five other Egyptian students. They **were considered to be** the first medical students to study in England. In 1930 she **qualified as** a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened **a private clinic** for women. She was **treating patients** until she was 70 years old. **After retiring**, she **started writing** and translating stories for children.

### Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa

Born: 1998

**Awards:** 1st place in **the Intel Science and Engineering competition**, NASA **named a planet after her recognizing her contribution to science**.

Education: Maadi STEM

School for Girls, Middle East **Technical University**

Yasmeen is **a role model** for other young Egyptian women. Born in Damietta, she **defied stereotypes**, **moving to Cairo** alone to attend the Maadi STEM school encouraged by her mother. Yasmeen's winning **invention** was **sparked** by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning **rice straw** gave clean water and also **produced a natural fuel** which can be used to **generate electricity**. She says her school gave her the **confidence** to **innovate** and to **defy prejudice**: 'I can change the world'.

## 2021 : A great year for Egyptian women athletes!

2021 was an **amazing** year for Egyptian female **athletes**. At the Tokyo **Olympics** Games, **Ferial Abdelaziz** became the first female Egyptian to win karate gold medal. Ferial studied to become **a pharmacist**, and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a **bronze medal** at the world **championship** in Spain and a **silver** medal at the 2019 African Games in Morocco.

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympics, Giana Farouk won **a bronze medal** at the same **event**. Giana had also won **a gold medal** at the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the world championships (two in Germany in 2019 and one in Austria in 2016).

Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became **the first Egyptian woman to be ranked** in the top of 100 players of the women's tennis **Association** (WTA), **reaching number 74 in September**. This was after she reached the (WTA) finals in Romania, where she lost to Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then, no Egyptian woman had won a match in

a Grand Slam tournament. These great women athletes and many others faced many obstacles and challenges. However, they were able to overcome them and proudly put Egypt on the word map of sports. The secret formula for their success was hard work, determination and a lot of patience.

### Mayar Sherif makes Egyptian tennis history

Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became the first Egyptian woman to win a match at a major tournament when she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open on Tuesday. Up until then, she hadn't won a match in a Grand Slam tournament, although she had previously played at the French Open in September 2020, where she lost in the first round. In fact, she'd only been playing professional tennis since January 2020. In an interview after the match she said she was proud of what she had achieved. She said she wasn't used to such fast courts and the heat, but every day she had been improving and getting used to the conditions. She also mentioned that since the French Open, Mo Salah, the Liverpool football star had been giving her advice about the mental side of competing and sleeping which had helped her game. It was Mayar's parents, big fans of the game, who had first got Mayar and her three sisters into playing. In 2016, when she was 20, she went to play tennis at an American University. Before that she had been training in Spain. She has received a big reaction from the Egyptian public after her win and this is helping to bring attention to the game. Asked what advice she had for other hopeful female players, she said that anyone could do it with hard work; they just had to believe in themselves and fight through the obstacles.

### LISTENING TEXT

#### An interview with Mayar Sherif

Interviewer: How long had you been playing tennis when you played your first professional match?

Mayar : Let's think, I started when I was five so I had been playing for 15 years.

Interviewer: Had you ever competed on clay courts before you played at the French Open?

Mayar : No, it was the first time I had played on a clay court in a professional match.

Interviewer: Did you think you were going to win the match against Chloe?

Mayar : No, to be honest, before the match I hadn't been hitting the ball very well. The courts were fast and it was difficult. But little by little I had been playing better and by the time I played against her I felt confident.

#### A report about a handball player

##### What's her dream?

In 2021 Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playing top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the Egyptian youth team, the under-eighteens and before she graduated she had played

for ... the under-twenties. She became one of **the best women handball players** in the country. In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke to Fatma, she said that in the past the country had **spent** a lot of money **on** the men's handball team, which **helped it to become** very successful. She hoped that the **sports organisers** would spend money on a women's team in the future. She also pointed out that in the past women had been very successful in other sports such as **Hedaya Malak and Sara Ahmed** who **won medals** at the 2016 **Olympics**. She said there was no reason women handball players could not do extremely well too. Let's hope that soon her dream will come true and that there will be **an international Egyptian handball team for women** over twenty one. We are sure that they will be very successful.

### **A podcast about the Maadi STEM school in Cairo**

#### **Why don't more girls study STEM subjects?**

**Despite the fact that** in most countries there are **more** girls at university **than** boys, **fewer girls than** boys complete **STEM university degrees**. **More** girls are in school today **than** ever before, but they don't always have the same **opportunities** as boys to choose the education or subjects they want. **Too many girls are held back by** **gender biases**, **stereotypes** and **social norms** **تقاليد** and **expectations** which **influence** the subjects they study. Research has shown that even though girls often get better grades than boys in **STEM subjects** in lower school, they choose not to carry on studying them later on because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get **poor grades**. Well, one answer to this is old girls' schools where it seems that girls are less likely to **conform** **يتوافق** to **stereotypes** and tend to be more **confident** about their abilities.

One school in Cairo has gone one step farther than this. The Maadi STEM school for girls is a school which **specializes in** STEM. One of its students is Hoda Mandour, a seventeen-year old girl from the Nile Delta. Like most **teenagers**, she loves playing sport and listening to music, but what makes her different is the **scientific research** she is doing at school. Last May, she and two other students took first place in **an international science and engineering fair**, where 1600 of the best and **brightest students** in the world had **presented** their ideas. Together these girls have found a way to **purify drinking water** using 24% less energy than **typically used**. Hoda says what they study there is far more interesting than in the old school. She says, "We do real research. Here everyone is a teacher and everyone is a student."

**The aim of the school** is to **raise a generation** of **critical thinkers and leaders**. Certainly the girls at Maadi seem **inspired** and motivated to become the next leaders. Hoda's **ambition** after she **graduates** is to find **a cure for Alzheimer's disease**, a disease which **affects the brains of older people**.

## A speech about Women's Day

Today, I'm going to talk about **Women's Day** in Egypt. Egypt's Women's Day is on the sixteenth of March, but in 2019 there was **a special sixteen days for Egyptian women from the first to the sixteenth of March**. The organizers had chosen these days **to remember the events** in 1919 when women **marched** on the street to complain about colonial rule. This event was **to remember women's contribution to the Egyptian society**.

In my opinion, women are **increasingly important** in Egyptian society. For example, there are now around ninety women who are **members of parliament**, more than ever before. In 2021 many women have become **judges** for the first time. The future is **bright for Egyptian women**.

## Book of the week

**What Katy Did** by Susan Coolidge .Susan Coolidge, an American **author** born in 1835, is still a big **inspiration** to many of today's **female authors**. **What Katy Did** is a story following the **adventures** of Katy and her brothers and sisters. Katy, 12, has an **accident on a swing** and can't walk. Her aunt had told her not to use the swing, but she hadn't explained why. It was broken.

Before the accident, Katy had been **a tomboy**. She was a little bit **naughty** and always getting into **trouble**. **She didn't care about her clothes and often got dirty climbing trees. She often argued with her brothers and sisters. After her accident, she becomes very angry and miserable** for a while. She gets very **impatient** and **cross** with everyone. However, her cousin, Clara, who is **disabled, encourages her to be kinder** and more **cheerful**. Katy learns she must make the best of things or lose the love of her family. She becomes the **'heart' of the family**. At the end of the book, she learns to walk again.

## Complete from the bar graph:

### Share of female doctors in selected countries as of 2015

Latvia 74.3%  
 Estonia 73.3%  
 Netherlands 51.7%  
 Spain 51.6%  
 United Kingdom 45.8%  
 Italy 40.3%  
 Australia 39.4%  
 United States 34.1%  
 Japan 20.3%

**Source:** OECD **Health Statistics** 2016

### Female doctors by country

The **bar graph** shows the **percentage** of **female doctors** in **certain given countries** around the world. It can be seen that there is **a very significant difference** across countries, from a **majority of women** doctors in some countries to a small **minority** in others. The country with the highest number of women doctors is 1 .....,



which has nearly three-quarters of **female doctors**, while the country with the smallest number is 2 ....., where **less than a quarter of doctors** are women. Netherlands and 3 ..... have **very similar numbers of women doctors**; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, **another European country** 4..... has around 10% fewer women doctors. **In conclusion**, the most **surprising** thing about the **figures** is the big **differences** across different countries, which do not **seem to be related to region**, or **size** or **economic development of the country**. **In other words**, there does not seem to be any obvious **pattern to the results**. It is **especially** interesting to **note the very low number of women doctors in Japan**. That may **reflect the stereotype** that Japanese women are usually expected to **look after** the home.

#####

## UNIT 2

## EXERCISES

**Choose the correct answer**

- The Great Zamalik faced a lot of problems this year but they were able to win all the championships in Egypt and Africa, especially the Egyptian ( tournament- cap- champion-medal ) for football
- How many ( authors - lawyers - doctors - vets ) of children's books can you name?
- He ( lectured - cultured - played - stayed ) at the University of Ohio about writing for children
- Many people have grown ( down - up - in - on ) reading the books of Abdel Tawab Youssef
- He studied ( engineering - politics - medicine - physics ) at Cairo University so he is able to design building.
- He ( got out-graduated- graded- interviewed ) from Cairo University in 1950 .
- He wanted to ( beat - earn - gain - win ) money to send his sisters to school.
- He didn't start ( writing - write-wrote- written ) until he was 25.
- The authors writes ( novels - poems - plays - stories ) to express his ideas.
- The stories were very( success - failure - failed - successful ) and made him famous
- He won many (awards - cups - reward - words ) as a writer which has made him famous.
- Since he became famous , his books have been(transported- translated -made-done)into many languages,
- The ( majority- minority- greag- least) of the Egyptians support the economic reform. They are 75%
- The company hopes that its..... will sell very well in the new year and achieves great profits.  
a) products                      b) measures                      c) productive                      d) selles
- Ayman cannot apply for the job in the bank because he is not ..... to do it.  
a) qualification                      b) qualified                      c) quality                      d) qualities
- I wish my brother would..... and get a house of his own.  
a) bring up                      b) grow up                      c) teach                      d) educate
- ..... is the official language of the people who live in Iran.  
a) Mandarin                      b) Persian                      c) Mandarin                      d) English
- Our local council (called- named- painted- lightened ) the streets of our town after famous men like Al Sadat.
- In summer, the sun ..... early in Egypt nearly at 5 o'clock.  
a) falls                      b) rises                      c) sits                      d) sets
- A geat number of students ( was- were- has- have ) absent yesterday because of rain.
- The geat number of students ( was- were- has- have ) absent yesterday because of rain.
- My English (teacher- tutor- lecturer- instructor) at university inspired me to become an English teacher
- Feryal Ashraf is a great ( rule- roll- role-drill) model for young female athletes in Egypt after winning the gold medal in Japan's Olympics

23. It is a (traditional-stereotype -customary-right )to think that all footballers are tall and strong. Some of them are quite small.
24. Ahmad Zewail was ( rewarded- won-got awarded ) Nobel Prize for discovering the femto second
25. Tarek studied very hard for many years and he has now ( qualified- qualification- qualified- went) as a doctor
26. Ahmad Zewail made great (contactations- contributions-participation-importance) to science in the field of chemistry.
27. Albert Einstein is perhaps the most famous (professor-doctor - physicist-physician) the world has known.
28. Jobs can give writers ..... that they can use in their writing.  
a) experiences                      b) experienced                      c) experiments                      d) experts
29. My cousin is ..... and cannot walk very well.  
a) disabled                      b) disability                      c) ability                      d) enable
30. Al -Ahram Weekly ..... a lot of articles about science every week.  
a- writes                      b- translates                      c - publishes                      d - does
31. There have been significant computer ..... during the last decade.  
a) attachments                      b) appointments                      c) developments                      d) agreements
32. Patience is the most important ..... for a teacher?  
a) quality                      b) quantity                      c) equality                      d) personality
33. I missed the plane, and the next ..... flight doesn't leave until tomorrow.  
a) comfort                      b) unavailable                      c) available                      d) availability
34. That play is very popular. You'd better check the ..... of tickets.  
a) available                      b) unavailable                      c) comfortable                      d) availability
35. I wanted to complain to the manager of the shop, but he was .....  
a) available                      b) unavailable                      c) comfortable                      d) uncomfortable
36. Your grades are ....., Ghaidaa.  
a) impressive                      b) impression                      c) impress                      d) impressed
37. The manager thought my CV was very ....., so I was appointed as a sales rep.  
a) impressive                      b) impression                      c) depressive                      d) massive
38. There are a lot of different ( technical-academic- high-agricultural) schools that graduate a lot of skilled people for working in factories
39. A ..... is the qualification given to someone who has successfully finished a university course  
a) degree                      b) referee                      c) guarantee                      d) trainee
40. As well as writing books on (social- sociable - society - variety) and culture, she wrote poems
41. To ..... for is to clearly explain why you think something is true or should be done  
a) bargain                      b) challenge                      c) review                      d) argue
42. Some students need more ..... than others at school.  
a. depression                      b. encouragement                      c.                      d. stress
43. This book has some useful ..... on how best to revise.  
a) tops                      b) taps                      c) tapes                      d) tips
44. Because of her parents' death, she left school with no .....  
a) qualities                      b) qualifications                      c) qualify                      d) qualified
45. Our great army protect our ( sides- borders- faces- mountains ) with other countries so we feel safe.
46. My friends work for Resala charity as (volunteers-sociable-professional-amateurs) . They don't get any money . I want to join them
47. Mo Salah is a (volunteer-sociable-professional-amateur) player in Liverpool. He gets a lot of money.
48. I would like to thank our volunteers, who have all made (frustration - depression - challenge-contribution) in helping to make the park look so beautiful.
49. The FIFA World Cup is an international ( tournament- cap-champion-medal ) for football that is held every four years.
50. The Australian tennis player Rod Laver won the ( tournament- cap-champion-Grand Slam ) twice, winning the Australian, French and US Open and Wimbledon in both 1962 and 1969.
51. The great boxer Tyson could beat his opponent in the second ( court- round- around- tip ) winning the world boxing championship
52. Tennis, basketball and volleyball are all played on a ( court- round- around- tip ).

53. My older sister is very (patient- impatient- careless-active). She explains carefully when I can't do my homework.
54. We saw some boys being very ( active-cruel – patient- polite)outside the school.They were throwing stones at a cat so we stopped them..
55. My brother is often(polite- careful- careless) naughty. He always hides my things and I become cofused.
56. Mona is often (grumpy-happy- pleased-cruel ) before lunch. Once ,she's eaten, she's quite cheerful again!
57. Hassan's sisters are both very good (natured-natural-nature-mature). They are always friendly and smiling.
59. Judy's children are very well( behaviour- behaved- behave-behaving ). They never complain and don't make problems
60. Egypt's (Women's – Woman's- Women's- Woman )day is on 16 March.
- 61.The Olympics is a great ( accident- incident- event- occasion ) that happens every four years.
62. The (organisers-students-poets- authors ) chose these dates to hold the great event in Egypt.
- 63.people believe that things would be better if women ( have- had had-had- will have ) more important jobs in business or government.
- 64.The level of education in the ( develop- developed- developing- development) countries is very high.
65. The people in the ( develop- developed- developing- development) countries suffer from a lot of problems
66. The report ( based- bases- basind- basing ) on the this graph, is very true.
67. – ( Percent-Percentage- number-amount )of men and woman doing housework in Europe, is very low
68. The first( court- round- around- tournament) of a sporting competition is when the opening game or match is played.
69. A( court- round- around- tournament) is a competition where there are a number of people competing to win a cup or prize.
70. In tennis you play on a ( court- round- around- tip ) which can be made of clay or grass.
71. The (volunteers-sociable-professtional-amatuers ) player is the one who is paid to play.
72. Feryal Ashraf ( made- did- gave- plated) history when she won a gold medal.
73. The sun ( rose- raised – aroyse- arose ) at 6 o'clock yerterday.
74. The doctor's smile ( rose- raised – aroyse- arose ) our hopes that our father would be fine
75. The boxer ( rose- raised – aroyse- arose ) his opponent and threw him on the ground.
- 76-The President's achivements have (effect – affect –influenced – influential) all the Egyptians well
- 77-Students are told about the (importance – import – good – well ) of revising before the exam.
78. Dr Ahmed Zewail is an (idle- impatient- incorrect- influential)person in the field of science.
- 79-He is an expert on science and often (does – makes – teach- lectures) at the university.
- 80-You should keep the documents. They are very ( trivial – important- ugly – silly )
- 81 -A spoiled child often behaves ( good – bad – badly- well ) and annoys us
- 82 -The ( liar -dishonest -knave- responsible ) is a person who is sensible and can be trusted
- 83 -My friend is ( joking – fun – serious – seriously ) quiet and does not often laugh.
- 84-The tourists sat by the pool and ( played –faced – focused – see ) the sun.
- 85- I will hold a big party in ( hour – honour – honest – honourable ) of my father
- 86-The good teacher should be ( patience – ill – impatient - patient ).
- 89-What are the necessary ( quantity – amounts – qualities- quota ) of a good teacher?
- 90- A good teacher should ( inspire – conspire – despair –insult ) his students.
- 91- We are ( making - giving - getting -doing ) a project about archaeology in Egypt
- 92- My father always encourages me to take ( place – part – up – down ) in conversations.
- 93- Walid always makes a revision ( plain - plane - pain- plan) two months before the exams.
94. There was a( lecture -culture -play - stay) at the university about new technology.
- 95-Shakespeare's plays are (influence-affect-influenced- influential). Many writers have used his stories.
- 96.The ..... attended a summit meeting with other heads of state.  
a) president                      b) resident                      c) student                      d) assistant
97. The head teacher(silenced - declared - sheltered ) the students before the visitor gave her talk.
98. They let children do whatever they want, so they ( believe- become- respect- behave) badly.

99. The minister took the full (responsible- irresponsible- responsibility) for the disaster and resigned.
100. Janet's dog was sick, so she took it to the (surgeon- pet- technician- vet).
101. Patience is the most important (quality- quantity- equality- personality) for a teacher?
102. He achieved a lot in his field, so the president (donated- imprisoned- honored- persuaded) him
103. Many people think that teaching is difficult, but it is a (worth- worthless- worthwhile) job.
- 104- You need a lot of (intelligence – food – fun – intelligent) to be good at chess.
- 105- The tourists went on a / an ( industrial – tiny – agricultural – cultural ) tour of Egypt, visiting all the sites.
- 106- The ( clerk – diver – president – minister ) is the official leader of a country which does not have a king or queen.
- 107- My history teacher ( influence – influencing – influenced – influential ) my decision to become a teacher, too.
- 108- Mona's uncle is an expert on science and often ( lectures – structures – attracts – attaches ) at the university.
- 109- The football team are playing with a lot of ( inconfidence – confident – confidential – confidence ). I think they are going to win!
- 110- Don't lose those forms. They're very ( important – unimportant – useless – bad ).
- 111- What is the ( difference – same – safety – different ) in meaning between where and wear?
- 112- We ( plan – plane – plant – planet ) to visit Rome for the holidays next year.
- 113- Teachers often ( encourage – discourage – insult – spoil ) their students to work hard.
- 114- The school secretary is ( irresponsible – respected – responsible – awarded ) for sending emails.
- 115- A good teacher should ( inspire – conspire – despair – insult ) his students.
- 116- The rich man ( set off – set out – sit up – set up ) an association to help children with disabilities.
- 117- Always show respect to your teachers. Remember that they work hard to help you have a ( success – succeed – successive – successful ) future.
- 118- When I finish school, I'd really like to do something to help other people. What ( advice – device – advise – devise ) can you give me?
- 119- I ( give – achieve – score – reach ) myself goals and plan to achieve them.
- 120- Good ( look – leak – luck – puck ) with your first match tomorrow.
- 121- ( But – However – Whatever – Why ) level you reach, you can dig deeper to find more layers that are even richer than before.
- 122- When his father died, it was a ( easy – good – difficult – nice ) time for him.
- 123- He wanted to send his sisters to school, ( who – which – where – why ) was unusual at that time.
- 124- He was married ( to – with – from – in ) a son and a daughter.
- 125- The head teacher ( recognized – realized – identified – qualified ) that the young teacher was worried.
- 126- People have translated his books ( for – on – onto – into ) many languages.
- 127- You are very natural ( of – on – with – at ) the students, but strict.
- 128- Leaving lights always on is a / an ( respectable – responsible – irresponsible – irritable ) behaviour.
- 129- ( Whatever – Whenever – Whoever – Wherever ) you do, there is no way to persuade him.
- 130- The nuclear energy project will help Egypt ----- more electricity in the future .  
a) grade                      b) generate                      c) import                      d) lose
- 131- Who is the most ( inspiring – conspiring – spring – expiring ) women? Sameera Moussa
- 132- The dealer takes a 20% ----- on the sales he makes .  
a) committee                      b) camp                      c) commission                      d) courage
- 134- The US Open , Wimbledon French Open and the Australian Open are called -----  
a) Grand Slam                      b) Grandparents                      c) Grand Museum                      d) Grandfathers
- 135- A ----- is a competition where there are a number people competing to win a cup.  
a) team                      b) tour                      c) tournament                      d) tower
- 136- In tennis you play on a ( cart – court – carrot – card ) which can be made of clay or grass
- 137- The first ----- of sporting competition is when the opening game or match is played.



- a) round                      b) around                      c) rally                      d) regime  
 138-In an interview after the match , she said she was proud ----- what she had achieved.  
 a) in                      b) on-                      c) off                      d) of  
 139-She said she ----- such fast courts and the heat .  
 a) wasn't used to                      b) used to                      c) didn't use to                      d) uses to  
 140- Mayar became the first Egyptian woman to ----- a match at a major tournament.  
 a) earn                      b) beat                      c) win                      d) gain  
 141-Our handball team can compete and ----- the strongest teams all over the world .  
 a) earn                      b) beat                      c) win                      d) lose  
 142- Mo Salah, the Liverpool football ----- had been giving her advice  
 a) stare                      b) store                      c) star                      d) stir  
 143- Do you think the ----- side of competing and sleeping helped her ?  
 a) mental                      b) metal                      c) metallic                      d) manual  
 144- She has received a big ----- from the Egyptian public after her win .  
 a) react                      b) respond                      c) reaction                      d) interact  
 145 Israel always puts ----- to hinder the peace process .  
 a) roses                      b) obstacles                      c) flowers                      d) flavours

### Translatin

**يجب أن نكون شاكرين لوالدينا لما قدموا لنا من تضحيات على مدى حياتهم.**

- 1.We should not be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
- 2.We should be thank to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
- 3.We should be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.
- 4.We should be thankful to our parents for what they have give us of sacrifices over their lives.

**لقد أصبحت ضرورة ملحة البدء فى إنشاء عاصمة جديدة بدل من القاهرة.**

- 1.It has become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.
- 2.It have become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.
- 3.It has become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.
4. It has become an urgent need to begin set up a new capital instead of Cairo.

**إن كل دولة فى العالم لها الحق فى استخدام الطاقة الذرية للغراض السلمية.**

- 1.Each country in the world has the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.
2. Every country in the world has the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.
3. Every country in the world have the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.
4. Every country in the world has the right to using atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

**يمكن تجنب الكثير من الأمراض عن طريق اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة.**

- 1.It's not possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.
- 2.It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by fallowing healthy dietary habits.
- 3.It's possible to avoid lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.
- 4.It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

**تهدف مؤتمرات السلام الى وضع نهاية للحروب وتحقيق السلام العالمى.**

- 1.Peace conferences aims to put an end to wars and achieve the world peace.
- 2.Peace conferences aim for put an end to wars and achieve the world peace.
- 3.Peace conferences aim to put an end to wars and achieve the world peaceful.
- 4.Peace conferences aim to put an end to wars and achieve the world peace.

**ينبغي أن نحافظ على نظافة مدينتنا ونحجبها من التلوث بكافة صورة.**

- 1.We should maintain the clean of our city and protect it from pollution in all its forms.
- 2.We should not maintain the cleanliness of our city and protect it from pollution in all its forms.
- 3.We should maintain the cleanliness of our city and protect it from pollution in all its forms.
- 4.We should maintain the cleanliness of our city and protective it from pollution in all its forms.

### Translate into Arabic

**1-The Egyptian monuments and museums attract millions of tourists from all over the world. We ought to exert more efforts to increase the number of tourists visiting Egypt nowadays.**

- 1.لاتجذب الاثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الايام
- 2.تجذب الاثار والمتاحف المصرية بلايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة السياح هذه الايام
- 3.تجذب الاثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الايام

4. تجذب الاثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء البلاد ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح تلك الايام

**2-Many people say that they are too busy to go swimming or to play football. But they don't have to do special exercise to be fit. In this case, walking or even cleaning the house is just as good for them as practicing games.**

1. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون بالسباحة او لعب كرة السلة ولكن يمارسون التمارين الرياضية تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسة الرياضة
2. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون بالسباحة او لعب كرة القدم ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الرياضية تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسة الالعاب
3. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون بالسباحة او لعب كرة السلة ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الالعاب تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسة الرياضة
4. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون بالسباحة او لعب كرة السلة ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الالعاب تجعلهم لاثقين فنيا وفي هذه الحالة فإن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسة الالعاب

**3. People nowadays need to understand that learning must be lifelong. This is necessary because the world of work is changing very fast. To remain employable, people must always look ahead and learn new knowledge and skills.**

1. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.
2. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ليس ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.
3. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن الثقافة يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيرة ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.
4. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة قليلة ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات قديمة.

**4.Health is a splendid blessing that completes our happiness. It's worthy saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For an unhealthy person life is no more pain and suffering.**

1. إن الثروة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام ومعاناته
2. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام ومعاناته
3. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل السهل فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام ومعاناته
4. إن الصحة نعمة جميلة والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام وسعاده

**5-Education for all. All means men and women, the old and the young, the rich and the poor and the educated and the uneducated in both rural and urban communities. Everyone needs education suitable for the age, its changes and its requirements so that they may contribute to education and benefit from it throughout their lives**

1. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أي للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون في كل المجتمعات الحضرية والصحراوية . فكل فرد يريد تعليميا يناسب عمرة بمتغيرات ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يسهم في التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
2. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أي للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون في كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليميا يناسب عمرة بمسئولياته ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يسهم في التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
3. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أي للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون في كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليميا يناسب عمرة بمتغيرات ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يستفيد من التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته
4. التعليم للجميع ونعني للجميع أي للرجال والنساء الكبار والصغار الاغنياء والفقراء المتعلمون وغير المتعلمون في كل المجتمعات الحضرية والريفية . فكل فرد يريد تعليميا يناسب عمرة بمتغيرات ومتطلباته حتى يمكنه أن يسهم في التعليم ويستفيد منه خلال حياته

**6-Some people think that genetically modified food may bring new diseases in the future. Others are in favour of this type of food. They think GM crops can improve agriculture and protect people from starvation in poor countries.**

- 1- يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يجلب أمراضا جديدة في المستقبل والبعض الآخر يؤيد هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمي الناس من المجاعات في الدول الغنية
- 2- يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يتغلب علي أمراضا جديدة في المستقبل والبعض الآخر يؤيد هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمي الناس من المجاعات في الدول الفقيرة
- 3- يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يجلب أمراضا جديدة في المستقبل والبعض الآخر يؤيد هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمي الناس من المجاعات في الدول الفقيرة
- 4- يعتقد بعض الناس أن الطعام المعدل وراثيا ربما يجلب أمراضا جديدة في المستقبل والبعض الآخر يمول هذا النوع من الطعام فهم يعتقدون أن محاصيل هذا الطعام يمكن أن تحسن الزراعة وتحمي الناس من المجاعات في الدول الفقيرة



## Grammar

### Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام

**Form:**

**التكوين**

**had + p.p.**

**يتكون الماضي التام من**

- We washed the dishes after we **had eaten** supper.

**Usage:**

**الاستخدام**

**يستخدم الماضي التام ليصف حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي.**

- When I met Ali yesterday, I remembered that we **had met** before, about ten years ago.
- When I got home, my wife **had cooked** the dinner.
- I **hadn't flown** before, so I was nervous about getting on the plane.

**يستخدم الماضي التام في الكلام غير المباشر لنقل أشياء حدثت بالفعل عندما كنت تتحدث عنها.**

- I **told** him that I **had weighed** the soil.
- She **said** she **had heard** it all before.

**يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات الآتية:**

after / بعد    as soon as / بمجرد أن    when / عندما    until / حتى    till / عندما

before / قبل    by the time / قبل    no sooner....than / حتى    لم يكـ... حتى

hardly (scarcely).....when / لم يكـ.....حتى

**ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام**    **past simple + ماضي تام**    **After + فاعل + past perfect**

**ماضي بسيط + past simple**    **After + v. + ing**

**ماضي بسيط + past simple**    **Having + p.p.**

**ماضي بسيط + past simple**    **As soon as + فاعل + past perfect**

**ماضي بسيط + past simple**    **When + فاعل + past perfect**

**ماضي تام + past perfect**    **By + مده في الماضي**

Ex: **After** he **had done** his homework, he **watched** television.

**After doing** his homework, he **watched** television.

**Having done** his homework, he **watched** television.

He **parked** his car **as soon as** he **had found** a place.

**By 2010 , Ali had got a new job in a factory.**

**ماضي تام + past perfect**    **Before + فاعل + past simple**

**ماضي تام + past perfect**    **Before + بدون فاعل + v. + ing**

Ex: Before he **parked** his, he **had found** a place.

Before **parking** his car, he **had found** a place.

ماضى تام + past perfect + ماضى بسيط + past simple + فاعل + By the time

ماضى تام + past perfect + ماضى بسيط + past simple + فاعل + When

Ex: **By the time** the police **arrived** the thief **had escaped**.

**When** he **had read** the novel, he **watched** TV.

**When** he **watched** TV, he **had read** the novel.

لاحظ الفرق فى المعنى بين هاتين الجملتين:

- **When I arrived** at the station, the train **left**.  
= I arrived, then the train left.
- **When I arrived** at the station, the train **had left**.  
= The train left before I arrived.

ماضى تام + till / until + ماضى بسيط غالبا منفى المصدر + Didn't

..... + مصدر + فاعل + did + ماضى تام + Not until + past perfect

ماضى بسيط + that + ماضى تام + It wasn't until + past perfect

ماضى بسيط + that + فاعل + ماضى تام + It was only when + past simple

Ex: He **didn't park** his car **until** he **had found** a place.

**Not until** he **had found** a place **did he park** his car.

**It wasn't until** he **had found** a place **that** he **parked** his car.

**It was only when** he **had read** the novel **that** he **watched** TV.

no sooner than  
ماضى بسيط + past simple + when + p.p. + had + hardly + فاعل  
scarcely when

Ex: He **had no sooner gone** shopping **than it started** to rain.

He **had hardly gone** shopping **when it started** to rain.

لاحظ استخدام no sooner/hardly /scarcely بين had و التصريف الثالث (pp)  
إذا بدأت الجملة بـ no sooner/hardly/scarcely نضع الجملة الأولى فى صيغة استفهام.

No sooner than  
ماضى بسيط + past simple + when + p.p. + فاعل + had + Hardly  
Scarcely when

- **No sooner had they finished** painting our new house **than** we **moved** into it.
- **Hardly had they finished** painting our new house **when** we **moved** into it.

لا بد من استخدام الماضى التام إذا كان ذلك يؤثر على معنى الجملة.

- He thanked me for what I **had done**.
- He found the bag, which he **had lost**.
- He was tired because he **had worked** for 14 hours.

ملاحظات عامة

**Immediately after** → ( اسم ) or ( v + ing ) →

**Immediately after** his arrival at the station, the train left.

- بشرط أن تكون الجملة في **because** بعد لاحظ :- أحيانا يستخدم الماضي التام

Leila was late for school **because** the bus had broken down.

He was angry **because** she had insulted him.

- إذا كان في مع الكلمات الدالة علي المضارع التام لاحظ :- يستخدم الماضي التام

**for / ever / never / already / yet / just**

The film had already started **when** I arrived.

On → ماضي بسيط ( اسم ) or ( v + ing ) → ماضي بسيط

On finishing work, I left the office.

The moment → ماضي بسيط → ماضي تام

The moment I had finished work, I left the office.

~~~~~

## Past Perfect Continuous

### زمن الماضي التام المستمر

يتكون الماضي التام المستمر من **had been + v. + ing**

- They **had been waiting for** an hour **when** the train **arrived**.

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر و يستخدم عادة مع **since / for / when / all day / all weekend**

- We'd **been waiting for** three hours **before** our plane **took off**.

يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر لتقديم سبب حدث في الماضي.

- There **were** floods because it **had been raining for** three days.

يأتي الماضي التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل

wait / do / study / live / work / stay / play / watch / sleep / paint / read / write / talk / run / walk / travel

- I **was** very tired when I arrived home. I **had been working** hard **all day**.

- He **had been smoking for** 30 years **when** he finally **gave** it up.

- They **had been waiting for** an hour **before** the train **arrived**.

- What **had he been doing when** the accident **happened**?

- There **were** floods because it **had been raining for** three days.

إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي التام المستمر:

- **When** I met **Ahmed**, he **had finished** typing 3 reports.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1- I didn't write to my friend until I (have received-had received-will receive-was received) his letter.
- 2- We (have had-had-had been having-had had) that car for ten years before it broke down.
- 3- When she went home she found that she (buy-has bought-had bought-would buy) the wrong book.
- 4- We (had played-has played-were playing-had been playing) tennis for only a few minutes when it started raining.
- 5- The secretary left the office after (type-had typed-typed-typing) all the letters.
- 6- Hardly (he had heard-has he heard-had he heard-does he hear) the bad news when he got depressed.

- 7- It (had been snowing-had snowed-snowed-has snowed) for a while before we left.
- 8- I (have-has-had-was) already left the house when it began to rain.
- 9- They had no sooner left the house (when-what-then-than) it started to rain.
- 10- There were floods because it (had been raining-has been raining-was raining-rains) for three days.
- 11- By the time Alex finished his studies, he (was-had been-has been-is) in London for over eight years.
- 12- When I went to my friend's flat, she (already left-has already left-had already left-left) for school.
- 13- Last year, I spent a month in France. I (dream-had dreamt-has dreamt-was dreaming) of going there since I was a child.
- 14- Leila and her husband (move-have moved-moved-had been moving) into their own flat last weekend. Before that they had lived with Leila's parents.
- 15- My father retired last week. He (worked-has worked-has been working-had worked) for the same company all his life.
- 16- Karim fell asleep during the football match because he (had gone-has gone-was going-is going) to bed late the night before.
- 17- The fish was fresh when I (bought-had bought-was buying-have bought) it.
- 18- Ali ate a sandwich during the game because he (wasn't having-had not had-doesn't have-won't have) enough time to eat before it started.
- 19- The doctor said that the patient (dies-died-had died-was dying) a few minutes before.
- 20- Hassan (borrows-has borrowed-borrowed-was borrowing) money from Ali because he had left his money at home.
- 21- Adel asked which team was red because he (doesn't see-hasn't seen-can't see-had not seen) these teams before.
- 22- I did not have any money because I (had lost-have lost-lost-lose) my wallet.
- 23- Paul (has looked-was looking-had been looking-looks) for work for over a year before he got a job.
- 24- The little children's clothes (are-have been-were being-were) dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.
- 25- He (had been driving-was driving-drives-to drive) for only 3 weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.
- 26- I went to the doctor's yesterday evening because I (have been feeling-was feeling-had been feeling-feel) ill for nearly a week.
- 27- When I got home, I was very tired. I (have been working-work-had been working-have worked) all day.
- 28- The town was flooded. It (has rained-had been raining-has been raining-rains) for 3 days.
- 29- After I (finish-have finished-had been finishing-had finished) my homework, I watched my favourite TV programme.
- 30- She (worked-has been working-had worked-had been working) at that company for three years when it went out of business.
- 31- There were floods because it (had been raining - has been raining - was raining - rains) for three days.
- 32- By the time he was 12, my brother (learnt - had learnt - has learnt - learns) 3 languages.
- 33- Jack knew Steve was at the match because Steve (had phoned - phones - was phoning - would phone) him before he went.
- 34- By the time she (finishes - finished - has finished - was finishing) writing her report, she had drunk six cups of tea.
- 35- The little children's clothes (are - have been - were being - were) dirty because they had been playing in the park all day.

- 36- He (had been driving – was driving – drives – to drive) for only 3 weeks, so it is not surprising that he failed his driving test.
- 37- When I got home, I was very tired. I (have been working – work – had been working – have worked) all day.
- 38- The town was flooded. It (has rained – had been raining – has been raining – rains) for 3 days.
- 39- After I (finish – have finished – had been finishing – had finished) my homework, I watched my favourite TV programme.
- 40- Before (wrote – writing – had written – has written) this novel, he had become famous as a playwright.
- 41- When she went out to play, she..... her homework.  
a) had already done    b) has already done    c) was already doing    d) does
- 42- My brother ate all of the cake that our mum .....  
a) will make    b) has made    c) had made    d) used to make
- 43- The doctor took off the plaster that he ..... on six weeks before.  
a) puts    b) had put    c) is putting    d) has put
- 44- he waiter ..... a drink that I had ordered.  
a) had brought    b) was bringing    c) will bring    d) brought
- 45- .....he phone Dalia before he went to see her in London?  
a) Did    b) Had    c) Has    d) Can
- 46- No sooner ..... the sun risen than the fog disappeared.  
a) has    b) had    c) did    d) does
- 47- Did you ..... write poems when you were young?  
a) use to    b) used to    c) used    d) get used to
- 48- When she went back to school, she found she ..... the wrong composition the day before  
a) wrote    b) had written    c) has written    d) had been written
- 49- She ..... a magazine when suddenly somebody knocked at the door.  
a) read    b) reads    c) was reading    d) had read
- 50- They couldn't go swimming because they ..... their swimsuits.  
a) forget    b) have forgotten    c) had forgotten    d) will forget
- 51- Before ..... for London, he had paid off his debts.  
a) leaving    b) left    c) had left    d) leave
- 52- Hany couldn't answer the phone because he ..... a shower.  
a) had    b) was having    c) had    d) had had
- 53- By the time he reached the bus stop, the bus .....  
a) leave    b) leaves    c) will leave    d) had left
- 54- ..... seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.  
a) On    b) Without    c) Despite    d) Over
- 55- No sooner ..... he see the police than he ran away.  
a) do    b) does    c) had    d) did
- 56- I ..... my own computer for three years before anything went wrong with it.  
a) had had    b) have had    c) had    d) have
- 57- Fawzi ..... already read some of Yehia Haqq's writing before learning about him in class.  
a) have    b) had    c) is    d) was
- 58- Mr Zaki was shocked when he joined our company as he ..... to do much work every day.  
a) wasn't used    b) didn't use    c) used    d) was used
- 59- As soon as the criminal ....., he was sent to prison .  
a) arrested    b) has been arrested    c) had been arrested    d) was being arrested
- 60- Did you go out last night or ..... you busy ?  
a) did    b) were    c) have    d) are
- 61- Crossing the street , he ..... on the ice and broke his arm.  
a) was slipping    b) slipped    c) had slipped    d) was slipped
- 62- We were sitting in the garden when it suddenly ..... to rain.  
a) was starting    b) started    c) had started    d) has started
- 63- Did you hear what she said ? – No, I ..... about something else.  
a) thought    b) was thinking    c) have thought    d. think
- 64- Sorry for being late . The car ..... down on my way here.  
a) was breaking    b) has broken    c) was broken    d) used to break

65-When it was lunchtime , I didn't eat much . I .....a big breakfast .

- a) was having      b) have had      c) had had      d) will be having

66- I ..... for two hours before the light went out.

- a) studied      b) was studying      c) had studied      d) had been studying m

67- As soon as I arrived home , I realised that I ..... my keys.

- a) had been losing      b) have lost      c) was losing      d) had lost.

68- Hardly ..... written the report when she handed it to me.

- a) she had      b) did she      c) had she      d) she has

69- My friend ..... to give me the mobile until he had watched the video.

- a) didn't      b) refused      c) wasn't      d) won't

70- After I ..... my friend I realised that I forgot to give him the address.

- a) will invite      b) invite      c) have invited      d) had invited.

71- His clothe were dirty because he ..... his car by himself.

- a) has mended      b) had been mending      c) has been mending      d) is mending.

72- I met Sally yesterday. I ..... her since she left our village.

- a) didn't see      b) haven't seen      c) hadn't seen      d) won't see

73- It wasn't ( when - until - after - before ) he had arrived that the light went out.

74- she had been sleeping all day before my mother ..... her.

- a) awoke      b) had awoken      c) awakes      d) has awoken

75- ( On - In - By - At ) 6:00 pm yesterday , I had done many jobs at home.

~~~~~

## ADJECTIVES الصفات

- الصفة عبارة عن كلمة تحدد معنى الاسم و توضحه.

- Dalia is **an intelligent girl**.

**be - feel - smell - taste - sound - seem - look**

- تأتي الصفة بعد بعض الأفعال مثل.

- Do you **feel tired**?

- The dinner **smells good**.

- لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم to + inf. بعد بعض الصفات مثل

**Difficult - easy - impossible - hard - happy - pleased - glad - sad - amazed - disappointed**

- It's **difficult to understand** him.

- I **was sorry to hear** that your father was ill.

- الصفة في اللغة الانجليزية لا تتغير حسب العدد أو الجنس

- He is **a kind brother**.

- She is **a kind sister**.

- They **are kind brothers**.

- They **are kind sisters**.

- يمكن استخدام أسماء الخانات كصفات لكنها لا تستخدم للمقارنة أو التفضيل أو التساوي و لا تجمع

- **a gold ring / an iron chair / silver coins**

- بعض الأسماء يستخدم كصفة لبيان الغرض من الاسم الموصوف مثل

- **a tea-spoon** : a spoon for putting tea in a cup

**(nice / kind / stupid / silly / clever / polite / careless)**

- لاحظ استخدام صفات مثل

في التركيبة التالية

- It ( be ) + adj. + of + someone + to + inf. ....

- It is **kind of you to lend me the money**.

- It **was careful of Ali to phone the police**.

## Comparative Adjective (بين اثنين) صفات المقارنة

♣ **الصفة في الدرجة الثانية تتكون من ( adjective + er + than / more (less) + adjective + than )**

( نضيف للصفة القصيرة er )

➤ Ahmed is **taller than** Soha.

➤ Soha is **shorter than** Ahmed

نستخدم ( more ) قبل الصفة المكونة من أكثر من مقطعين أو مقطعين مشتقين

➤ The car is **more expensive than** the bike.

➤ Zewail is **more famous than** any scientist.

↪ (لاحظ أن less ) توضع أمام أي صفة سواء مكونة من مقطع أو أكثر

♣ He is **less tall than** me .

♣ 'she is **less beautiful than** her sister.

↪ لاحظ أن الأهم في الدرجة الثانية هو إنها مقارنة بين اثنين

♣ Which is the **easier language** , German or French?

♣ Who is **the taller** of the twins?



♠ I didn't think the car was so expensive. ♠ The car was more expensive than I thought

♦ لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد **than** (يستخدم ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):

♠ He is taller than me/him/her.

♠ But: He is taller than I am / he is/ she is.

♦ لاحظ أن الصفة بعد **and** تأخذ نفس شكل الصفة قبلها

♠ The weather is getting colder and colder

♠ He runs faster and faster

يمكن استخدام **slightly / a bit / much / a lot / a little / far/ a few / many** قبل الدرجة الثانية لتوضيح الفرق:

♠ Going by plane is much more expensive.

♠ You have to move a bit faster.

♠ He is a little taller than his wife .

♠ Gold is much more expensive than silver

♠ A few more people attended his conference than our conference.

♠ Cairo is not so (as) cold as London .

♠ Cairo is hotter than London

♠ Modern machines work more efficiently than the old ones. (لاحظ أن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات)

♠ The rabbit runs more quickly than the tortoise. ♠ He works harder than you .

♠ If you get up early, you will arrive early = ♠ the earlier you get up , the earlier you arrive

لاحظ أن (as) + اسم = the same + noun + صفة + as + adjective

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
old	age	tall	height
deep	depth	high	height
expensive	price	heavy	weight
long	length	wealthy	wealth
wide	width	strong	strength

- Rania is **the same age as** Rasha. (as old as)

- Rania is as old as Rasha.

- Samy is **as tall as** Ramy.

(the same)

- Samy and Ramy are **the same height**.

- Samy is the same height as Ramy.

عادة نستخدم ضمير مفعول عندما لا يوجد فعل و نستخدم ضمير فاعل عندما يوجد فعل **than / as** بعد -

- You are **taller than** me. = You are **taller than** I am.

- يمكن أن نحدد مقدار الصفة باستخدام **a little / a bit / much / a lot / far (= a lot)**

- Going by bus is **a lot cheaper than** going by plane. - Going by plane is **much more expensive**.

- Her illness was **far more serious than** we at first thought

- أحيانا نستخدم **most** بدون **the** قبل الصفة بمعنى **very**.

- The article **I've just read was very interesting**.

(most)

- The article **I've just read was most interesting**.

- عندما نريد أن نقول أن هناك شيئا يعتمد على شيء آخر نستخدم

**فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + the + فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة + The**

- As you **get older**, you become wise.

(The older)

- **The older** you get, **the wiser** you become.

- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في الشيء.

- It's becoming **harder and harder** to find a job. - It's becoming **more and more difficult** to find a job.

- **The higher** we go, **the colder** we feel.

- **The more** you study, **the more** marks you get.

- **The more** you talk, **the less** you work.

- لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام بعد صفة التفضيل.

- This is **the most interesting book I've ever read**.

- بعد صيغة التفضيل نستخدم حرف الجر **in** مع الأماكن و نستخدم **of** مع الأشخاص و الأشياء

- Dalia is **the best student** in our class.

- Dalia is **the best of her friends**.

- Water is the least expensive of all liquids.

- لاحظ أننا نقول **the farthest ....from / the nearest .....to** - Pluto is **the farthest planet** from the sun.- Mercury is **the nearest planet** to the sun.

### 3-الصفة الدرجة الثالثة

♣ **الصفة الدرجة الثالثة تتكون من ( adjective + est / The most ( least ) + adjective )**

♣ Soha is the tallest girl in the class. ♣ He is the most intelligent boy in the school .

♣ My grandfather is the oldest member in our family .

♣ Diamond الماس is the most expensive metal ♣ Amr is the tallest person in the family

♣ I love my father best.

♣ لاحظ عدم استخدام ( the ) لعدم وجود اسم بعد الصفة

♣ لاحظ استخدام الدرجة الثالثة مع الكلمات first / second / third,...etc

♣ Alexandria is the second largest city in Egypt. ♣ He has got the third highest marks .

♣ لا تستخدم the قبل الدرجة الثالثة في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية قبل الصفة:

♣ It was his biggest achievement in Chemistry. ♣ Nada is my best friend

♣ الدرجة الثالثة تصبح درجة ثانية بوضع كلمة ( any ) قبل الطرف الثاني أو نبدأ بالطرف الثاني مسبقاً بـ ( No )

♣ French is the easiest subject. ♣ No subject is easier than French.

♣ Sally is the cleverest girl I have ever seen ♣ I have never seen such a clever girl as Sally

♦ لاحظ استخدام (of) عندما يكون بعدها جمع ونستخدم (in) عندما يكون بعدها مفرد بعد صفة التفضيل

♣ The longest river in the world ♣ The Pacific is the biggest of all oceans

♣ She is the most intelligent lady in the conference ♣ Salah is the best player in Africa.

### ♣ Irregular adjectives: صفات شاذة

الدرجة الأولى	الدرجة الثانية	الدرجة الثالثة	الدرجة الأولى	الدرجة الثانية	الدرجة الثالثة
good	<b>better than</b>	<b>the best</b>	well	<b>better than</b>	<b>the best</b>
bad / badly	<b>worse than</b>	<b>the worst</b>	ill	<b>worse than</b>	<b>the worst</b>
many	<b>more than</b>	<b>the most</b>	much	<b>more than</b>	<b>the most</b>
little	<b>less than</b>	<b>the least</b>	old	<b>Elder</b>	<b>eldest</b>
far	<b>farther / further than</b>	<b>farthest / furthest</b>			

♣ My eldest sister got married . ( لا تستخدم elder / eldest في المقارنة إنما في وصف أفراد الأسرة )

♣ Alexandria is farther / further أبعد than Cairo .

♣ I need further information معلومات إضافية about the salary

بعض الصفات تأخذ في المقارنة ( most / more / est او er ) مثل:

♣ cruel ( crueller / more cruel ) ♣ common شائع ♣ lovely جميل ♣ polite مؤدب

### Choose the right answers

1-Yesterday was hot and today is .....

. a hotter b. hotter c. hotter than d. hottest

2-Planes are ..... faster than trains.

a. a lot of b. more c. much d. as

3-The Egyptian museum is one of the....places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.

a. most popular b. least popular c. less popular d. more popular

4-Your homework is ..... than last week; you seem lazy!

a. bad b. good c. worse d. better

5-This exam seems .....than the previous one; you don't have to worry.

a. much difficult b. easier c. the easiest d. more difficult

6-Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really.....

a. oldest b. youngest c. older d. younger

7-Which is .....in summer: Cairo or Alexandria?

a. hotter b. hottest c. as hot d. hotter than

8-What is the.....mountain in Europe?

a. much high b. highly c. high d. highest

9-I love all my family, but I love my father.....of all.

- a )more      b) much      c) the most      d) most

10- Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked .....

- a) worse      b) the worst      c) more      d) badly

11-Heba's wearing her .....dress today.

- a) more new      b) newer than      c) the newest      d) newest

12.Huda is.....fatter than her sister.

- a) little      b) less      c) a bit      d) more

13.For.....information , contact the receptionist.

- a) farther      b) further      c) furthest      d) far

16.English is ..... to study than Chinese

- a) easy ..... b) more easier      c) much easier      d) less easier

17-I don't read as.....books as you do

- a-more      b-much      c-many      d-most

18-It was.....of her to waste all her money.

- a-more foolish      b- less foolish      c- foolish      d- least foolish

19- He was not.....as his colleagues.

- a-helpful      b- as helpful      c- more helpful      d- less helpful

20-The.....fat you eat, the healthier you become.

- a-less      b-much      c-least      d-most

21-Although we aren't rich, my children go to.....

- a) the best      b) the most      c) as good      d) the better

22-You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look.....today.

- a) happier      b) more happy      c) much happy      d) happiest

23 I think air pollution is..... more dangerous than sound pollution.

- a) so      b) a lot      c) many      d) a lot of

24. We aren't the same..... You're taller than me.

- a) length      b) age      c) height      d) amount

25.Basmala is the .....of the two sisters.

- a) young      b) as young as      c) youngest      d) younger

26.The..... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.

- a) longer      b) long      c) longest      d) most long

27-She is not. .... as her mother.

- a) more beautiful      b) most beautiful      c) beautiful than      d) so beautiful

28.Mr Hassan doesn't earn..... money as I do.

- a the most      b. more      c. so much      d. as many

29.He has much..... friends than me.

- a. more      b. the least      c. most      d. many

30-Of all the players, I like Mohammad Salah.....

- a. better      b. worst      c. good      d. best

31-Jana has a beautiful baby, but Judy has the..... baby on earth.

- a) more beautiful      b) most beautiful      c) beautiful      d) most beautifully

32. Maher isn't. ... friendly as Hussein.

- a) than      b) so      c) far      d) much

33.Water is the.....expensive, but the most needful, of all liquids.

- a) most      b) least      c) less      d) more

34.The shorter the queue is, the..... the service is.

- a) fast                      b) fastest                      c) faster                      d) less fast
- 35..M Most other metals aren't. .... as gold.
- a) precious                      b)the most Precious                      c) more precious                      d) as precious
- 36.A modern BMW is. .... expensive than this old Fiat.
- a. much more                      b. much                      c. the most                      d. most
- 37-I have two brothers. One is a doctor and the. .... is an engineer.
- a.later                      b. latter                      c. latest                      d.late
- 38-Tablets are becoming..... popular nowadays.
- a. more and more                      b. much and more                      c. more and less                      d. less and more
- 39-The more books she reads. .... ignorant she is.
- a. the more                      b. the less                      c. the most                      d.the least
- a) large                      b) the largest                      c) much large                      d)larger
- 41- I love all my family, but I love my father ..... of all.
- a) more                      b) much                      c) the most                      d) most
- 42-Heba's wearing her.....dress today.
- a) more new                      b) newer than                      c) the newest                      d) newest
- 43.Huda is.....fatter than her sister.
- a) little                      b) less                      c) a bit                      d) more
- 44.For. .... information , contact the receptionist.
- a) farther                      b) further                      c) furthest                      d) far
- 45.English is .....to study than Chinese
- a) easy                      b) more easier                      c) much easier                      d) less easier
- 46-I don't read as..... books as you do
- a-more                      b-much                      c-many                      d-most
- 47-It was..... of her to waste all her money.
- a-more foolish                      b- less foolish..... c- foolish d- least foolish
- 48- He was not.....as his colleagues
- a-helpful                      b- as helpful                      c- more helpfuld- less helpful
- 49-The..... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
- a- less                      b-much                      c-least                      d-most
- 50- Perhaps I looked bad this morning, but she looked .....
- a)worse                      b) the worst                      c) well                      d)badly
- 51-I come from a large family, but my grandfather had a ..... one.
- a) large                      b) the largest                      c) much large                      d) larger
- 52.The Pacific Ocean is the world's .....ocean.
- a) deepest                      b) the deepest                      c)deep                      d) deeper
- 53.I can t hear you. Could you speak a little. ....,please?
- a) loudly                      b) loudest                      c)loud                      d) louder
- 54.Travelling by train is ..... than travelling by bus.
- a) expensive                      b) the most expensive                      c) more expensive                      d) much expensive
- 55.This tree is..... than the building over there.
- a) more taller                      b) a bit taller                      c) very tall                      d) the tallest
- 56..My sister thinks she's. .... than me, but I don't agree!
- a) the most intelligent                      b) much intelligent                      c) intelligent                      d) more intelligent
- 57.My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something .....interesting.
- a) much                      b) most                      c) less                      d) more
- 58.You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look. .... today.
- a) happier                      b) more happy                      c) much happy                      d) happiest
- 59 I think air pollution is.....more dangerous than sound pollution.
- a) so                      b) a lot                      c) many                      d) a lot of

60. He is. than all of his four brothers.

- a) more taller      b) the tallest      c) the taller      d) taller

61. I was not as intelligent as the others, but I was.....

- a) more prettier      b) pretty      c) the prettiest      d) most pretty

62. I am afraid his situation is going from bad to.....

- a) worse      b) bad.. c) worst      d) badly

63. China is.....than any other country in the world.

- a) most populated      b) more populated      c) populated      d) as populated

64. Although we aren't rich, my children go to.....schools in the city.

- a) the best      b) the most      c) as good      d) the better

65. A falcon has got a.....eyesight than a human.

- a) good      b) better      c) best      d) bad

66. Unfortunately her illness was.....we thought at first.

- a) serious      b) more serious      c) more serious than      d) the most serious

67. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere.....

- a) more quiet      b) much quiet      c) quieter      d) most quiet

68. We aren't the same height. You're.....than me.

- a) taller      b) higher      c) longer      d) bigger

69. Sanaa is the ..... of the two sisters.

- a) young      b) as young as      c) youngest      d) younger

70- This is the ( hard- harder - less hard- hardest ) test I've ever taken.

72- He was not ( helpful- as helpful- more helpful - less helpful ) as his colleagues.

73- He is not ( so - more - less - lessen ) reliable as his friend.

74- My flat is ( more big - less big - biggest - the biggest ) than yours.

75- You didn't do as ( more - less - least - much ) work as I did.

76- Her friend is ( wealthy - wealthiest - wealthier - wealthiest ) than her.

77- My car is ( less - more - least - most ) small than yours.

78- Nobody here is ( efficient - as efficient as - most efficient than - as efficient ) Peter.

79- It was ( more foolish - less foolish - foolish - least foolish ) of her to waste all her money.

80- Mobiles are ( as and more - more and so - much and more - more and more ) popular

82- French is ( many - most - much - more ) easier than English.

83- A ( few - few more - Less - little ) students enrolled on our course than last year.

# Unit Three

## Vocabulary

Beyond imagination  
بعيدا عن التخيل  
By: Mr El Sebaei Atteya

<b>technology</b>	تكنولوجيا	<b>practical</b>	عملي	<b>degree</b>	درجة علمية
<b>innovative</b>	مبتكر	<b>spectacularly</b>	بصوره مذهله	<b>educational</b>	تعليمي
<b>impact</b>	تأثير	<b>War</b>	الحرب	<b>nature</b>	طبيعه
<b>medicine</b>	دواء - طب	<b>experiment</b>	يجرب - تجربه	<b>popular</b>	محبوب - شعبي
<b>surround</b>	يحيط - يطوق - يلف	<b>create</b>	يخلق - يبدع	<b>flat</b>	شقه
<b>Surround sound</b>	صوت مجسم	<b>illustrate</b>	يوضح-يبين - يفسر	<b>types</b>	انواع
<b>surrounded</b>	محاط - مطوق	<b>hide</b>	يخفي	<b>astronaut</b>	عالم فضاء
<b>Immerse in</b>	ينغمس فيه	<b>process</b>	عملية	<b>Astronomer</b>	عالم فلك
<b>implement</b>	يغمر - ينفذ - اداه	<b>printing</b>	طباعة	<b>planets</b>	كواكب
<b>mass-produced</b>	انتاج ضخم	<b>rolls</b>	لفات	<b>solar system</b>	النظام الشمسي
<b>process</b>	عملية	<b>rather than</b>	بدلا من- افضل من	<b>spacecraft</b>	سفينة فضاء
<b>approach</b>	يقترّب - اقتراب-نهج	<b>sheet</b>	فرخ ورق- ملايه	<b>universe</b>	الكون
<b>spectacularly</b>	بطريقه مذهله	<b>T-ring</b>	رنين	<b>Earth</b>	الارض
<b>inconvenient</b>	غير ملائم	<b>innovation</b>	ابتكار	<b>powerful</b>	قوي
<b>system</b>	نظام	<b>experience</b>	تجربه	<b>bake</b>	يخبز
<b>involve</b>	يشتمل - يتضمن	<b>immersive</b>	شامل - غامر	<b>pieces</b>	قطع
<b>methods</b>	طرق - مناهج	<b>potential</b>	محتمل - ممكن	<b>lend</b>	يسلف
<b>device</b>	جهاز	<b>price</b>	ثمن	<b>drugs</b>	ادويه - مخدرات
<b>view</b>	منظر - رأي - رويه- مشهد	<b>predict</b>	يتنبأ	<b>operation</b>	عملية
<b>difficulty</b>	صعوبه	<b>major</b>	رئيسي	<b>sensor</b>	مجس
<b>cheap</b>	رخيص	<b>advertising</b>	اعلان	<b>surgeon</b>	جراح
<b>speaker</b>	سماعه- متحدث	<b>packaging</b>	التغليف	<b>treatment</b>	علاج
<b>experiment</b>	تجربه - يجرب	<b>Imagine</b>	يتخيل	<b>train</b>	يدرب - قطار
<b>Fantasia</b>	لحن موسيقي	<b>tins</b>	علب	<b>remove</b>	يزيل
<b>Fantasia</b>	جماع-خيال- شغف	<b>adverts</b>	اعلانات	<b>injury</b>	اصابه
<b>Fantasound</b>	صوت خبالي	<b>local</b>	محلي	<b>Experts</b>	خبراء
<b>audience</b>	جمهور - مشاهدون	<b>quality</b>	جوده - صفه	<b>Artificial intelligence</b>	الذكاء الصناعي
<b>visuals</b>	بصريات - مراثيات	<b>director</b>	مدير - مخرج	<b>decades</b>	عقود
<b>Unfortunately</b>	لسوء الحظ	<b>theatre</b>	مسرح	<b>assistants</b>	مساعدين
<b>scale</b>	نطاق - تقدير	<b>real</b>	حقيقي	<b>business</b>	عمل - شركه
<b>require</b>	يتطلب	<b>screen</b>	شاشه	<b>advertisement</b>	اعلان
<b>self-driving</b>	القيادة الذاتية	<b>replace</b>	يستبدل	<b>skills</b>	مهارات
<b>global warming</b>	الاحتباس الحراري	<b>science fiction</b>	خيال علمي	<b>Mars</b>	المريخ
<b>teens</b>	مراهقين	<b>Curious</b>	فضولي	<b>blog</b>	مدونه
<b>curiousteen</b>	مراهق فضولي	<b>website</b>	موقع	<b>Search for</b>	يبحث عن
<b>conversation</b>	محادثه	<b>constant</b>	دائم	<b>exist</b>	يوجد
<b>conditions</b>	ظروف - شروط	<b>essential</b>	لازم - ضروري	<b>forms</b>	اشكال
<b>temperature</b>	درجه حراره	<b>permanent</b>	دائم	<b>liquid</b>	سائل
<b>minus</b>	سالب	<b>hopeful</b>	به امل	<b>go down</b>	يهبط - ينزل
<b>data</b>	بيانات	<b>conquer</b>	يغزو	<b>step</b>	يخطو - خطوة
<b>advances</b>	تطورات	<b>survive</b>	ينجو	<b>expand</b>	يتمدد
<b>evidence</b>	دليل	<b>distances</b>	مسافات	<b>charge</b>	يشحن
<b>monitor</b>	يلاحظ - يراقب - شاشه	<b>apps</b>	تطبيقات	<b>fitness</b>	لياقه
<b>health care</b>	رعايه صحيه	<b>tasks</b>	مهام	<b>robot</b>	انسان الى
		<b>recognise</b>	يتعرف علي	<b>health</b>	صحه



comments	تعليقات	on balance	أجمالاً / بشكل عام	gamer	لاعب
calculator	آلة حاسبة	complicated	معقد	dishwashers	غسالة أطباق
disasters	كوارث	depend on	يعتمد على	safety	أمان
earthquake	زلازل	Rely on	يعتمد على	escape	يهرب
security	أمن	issue	موضوع - قضية	individuals	أفراد
Addict	يُدمِن - مدمِن	hackers	قراصنة	cure	علاج
Addiction	إدمان	organisation	منظمة	diseases	أمراض
benefits	فوائد	obvious	واضح	Log in	يدخل على الإنترنت
environment	البيئة	register	يسجل - سجل	reply	يجيب - رد
recycle	يعيد استخدام	expressions	تعابير	fuel	وقود - يَفُول
marsh	ماشية عسكرية			design	يصمم - تصميم

## Definitions

astronaut	Someone who travels and works in a spacecraft	رائد فضاء
astronomer	A scientist who studies the stars and planets	غالب فلك
planet	A very large round object in space that moves around the sun or another star.	كوكب
solar system	It means the sun and the planets that go around it	النظام الشمسي
spacecraft	A vehicle that is able to travel in space	مركبة فضاء
surface	the top layer of an area of water or land	سطح
universe	Is all the space including all the stars and planets.	الكون
drugs	medicines or things that make medicines	أدوية - عقاقير
operation	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged	عملية
records	Information about something that is written down or stored on computer, film etc so that it can be looked at in the future.	سجلات
sensor	a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.	مجس
apprentice	Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period to learn a job	صبي
apprenticeship	The job or the period of being apprentice ,	تدريب مهني
surgeon	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better	جراح
surgery	Medical treatment in which a surgeon cuts open your body to repair or remove something inside	جراحه
treatment	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill	علاج
robot	right or acceptable for a particular situation.	إنسان آلي
mass-produced	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine	إنتاج ضخم
process	method of producing something	عملية
experiment (v)	use scientific methods to find something out or discover something	يعمل تجربته
speaker	device through which sound is heard	سماعة
implement	start using a system	ينفذ
immerse	involve yourself deeply in	ينغمس في
approach	way of viewing or doing something	اقترب - نهج

<b>surround</b>	<b>be all round (someone or something)</b>	يحيط
<b>argument</b>	A situation in which two or more people disagree with ,often angrily	جدال
<b>spectacularly</b>	<b>extremely good, exciting or surprising</b>	بطريقة مذهلة
<b>inconvenient</b>	causing <b>difficulty</b> or problems	غير ملائم
<b>Surround sound</b>	a system that uses 3 or more speakers to make you feel like you are 'surrounded' by sound	صوت مجسم

## Expressions

<b>as far back as</b>	الى الوراء بقدر	<b>play a positive role in</b>	يلعب دور ايجابي في
<b>In fact = in truth= actually</b>	في الحقيقة	<b>As a result</b>	كنتيجة
<b>on a big scale</b>	علي نطاق واسع	<b>allow</b> مصدر to مفعول	يسمح
<b>Instead of</b>	بدلا من	<b>finished reading</b>	ينتهي من قراءة
<b>An illustrated book</b>	كتاب مصور	<b>Pass his driving test</b>	ينجح في امتحان
<b>made noises</b>	يعمل ضوضاء	<b>a piece of equipment</b>	واحدة من المعدات
<b>a printing process</b>	عملية الطباعة	<b>measure light, heat, sound</b>	يقيس الضوء- الحرارة
<b>one sheet at a time.</b>	علي ورقة في كل	<b>self-driving cars</b>	عربات ذاتية
<b>at a competitive price</b>	بسعر تنافسي	<b>communicate in any language</b>	يتصل بأي لغة
<b>on bottles</b>	على الزجاجات	<b>stopped using plastic</b>	يتوقف عن استخدام
<b>the first new cycle</b>	اول دوره جديده	<b>electric cars</b>	عربات كهربائية
<b>cancel</b>	يؤجل	<b>make flights</b>	يقوم برحلات جوية
<b>successful at</b>	ناجح في	<b>run out of oil</b>	ينفذ منه البنزين
<b>look after = take care of</b>	يعتني بـ	<b>have a degree in</b>	لديه درجة علمية
<b>care for</b>	يعتني بـ ( شخص	<b>in detail</b>	بالتفصيل
<b>care about</b>	( يهتم بـ ) شيء / موضوع	<b>popular with</b>	مشهور لدي / محبوب من
<b>college</b>	كلية	<b>science fiction films</b>	أفلام الخيال علمي
<b>appeal to</b>	يروق لـ - يُعجِب	<b>interested in finding out</b>	مهتم باكتشاف
<b>personal life</b>	حياه الشخصية	<b>burning questions</b>	اسئله ملحه
<b>Plastic toys</b>	لعب بلاستيك	<b>Thank you for your question</b>	شكرا علي سؤالك
<b>to sum up</b>	باختصار	<b>keep using</b>	يواظب علي
<b>Special speakers</b>	سماعات خاصه	<b>on average</b>	في المتوسط
<b>In addition</b>	بالضافه الي	<b>extreme</b>	قاسي - شديد
<b>a special process</b>	عملية خاصه	<b>find some evidence</b>	يجد بعض الادله
<b>special square cinemas,</b>	سينمات مربعه خاصه	<b>on the website</b>	علي الموقع
<b>needed to watch</b>	احتاج ان يشاهد	<b>in groups</b>	في مجموعات
<b>In seats</b>	في مقاعد	<b>do some research</b>	يعمل بحص
<b>in what way = how</b>	كيف	<b>Stay healthy</b>	يبقي بصحه جيده
<b>make films</b>	يعمل فيلم	<b>perform tasks</b>	بالتفصيل
<b>get on well</b>	يتوافق مع	<b>do( perform) operations</b>	يجري عمليات
<b>traditional films</b>	افلام تقليديه	<b>create opportunities</b>	يخلق فرص
<b>on the one hand</b>	من جهة	<b>Work out maths problems</b>	يحل مسائل
<b>warn about</b>	يحذر بخصوص	<b>help me keep</b>	يساعدني ان
<b>Natural disasters</b>	كوارث طبيعيه	<b>advanced warning systems</b>	انظمه تحذير متطوره
<b>cyber security</b>	امن السايبر	<b>computer hackers</b>	مقرصني الكمبيوتر
<b>on the whole</b>	بوجه عام	<b>on the other hand</b>	من جهة اخرى
<b>addicted to+v+ ing</b>	مدمن لـ	<b>because of+v+ ing or اسم</b>	بسبب

<b>discover new cures</b>	يكتشف علاج جديد	<b>Make predictions</b>	يتنبأ
<b>Negative and positive effects</b>	تأثير ايجابي وسلبي	<b>buy the latest phone</b>	يشترى احسن
<b>means throwing away</b>	يعني يلقي بعيدا	<b>be connected to the net</b>	متصل بالنت
<b>keep in touch with</b>	يكون علي اتصال مع	<b>In the shape of the pyramids</b>	علي شكل الاهرام
<b>surrounded by</b>	محيط بـ	<b>find out about</b>	يكتشف بخصوص
<b>artificial intelligence</b>	الذكاء الاصطناعي	<b>life forms</b>	أشكال الحياة
<b>artificial limbs</b>	أطراف صناعية	<b>set a goal</b>	يحدد هدف
<b>false teeth</b>	أسنان صناعية	<b>Security and safety</b>	الآمن والأمان
<b>provide ---- for</b>	يقدم لـ	<b>achieve a goal</b>	يحقق هدف
<b>provide --- with</b>	يزود بـ	<b>advantages / merits</b>	مزايا

**Derivatives**

<b>Verb</b>		<b>Noun</b>		<b>Adjective</b>	
<b>create</b>	يخلق - يبدع	<b>Creation-creator</b>	خلق - الخالق	<b>creative</b>	مبدع
<b>innovate</b>	يبدع	<b>Innovate- Innovation</b>	إبداع	<b>Innovated</b>	مبدع
<b>compete</b>	ينافس	<b>competiton</b>	منافسة	<b>competitive</b>	تنافسي
<b>produce</b>	ينتج	<b>Production- producer</b>	إنتاج - منتج	<b>productive</b>	إنتاجي
<b>hide</b>	يخفي	<b>hide</b>	يخفي	<b>hidden.....</b>	مخفي
<b>immerse</b>	ينغمس في	<b>immersion</b>	انغماس	<b>immersed</b>	منغمس
<b>direct</b>	يرشد - يوجه	<b>director</b>	مخرج - مدير		
<b>surround</b>	يحيط بـ	<b>surround</b>	احاطه	<b>surrounding</b>	محيط بـ
<b>Approach</b>	يقترّب من	<b>approach</b>	اقتراب - نهج	<b>approachable</b>	قابل للاقتراب منه
<b>predict</b>	يتنبأ	<b>prediction</b>	تنبؤ	<b>predictable</b>	يمكن التنبؤ به
<b>design</b>	يصمم	<b>design- designer</b>	يصمم - تصميم	<b>designed</b>	تم تصميمه
<b>visualize</b>	يتصور - يتخيل	<b>visual</b>	صوره بصريه	<b>visual</b>	بصري
<b>brave</b>	يواجه بشجاعه	<b>bravery</b>	شجاعه	<b>brave</b>	شجاع
<b>popularise</b>	يروج	<b>popularity</b>	شعبية	<b>popular</b>	شعبي
<b>develop</b>	يطور	<b>development</b>	تطوير - تطوير	<b>Developing- developed</b>	متطور - نامي
<b>train</b>	يدرّب	<b>trainer - trainee</b>	مدرب - متدرب	<b>trained</b>	متدرب
<b>advertise</b>	يعلن	<b>advertisement</b>	إعلان	<b>advertisable</b>	قابل للنصح
<b>succeed</b>	ينجح	<b>success</b>	نجاح	<b>successful</b>	ناجح
<b>practise</b>	يمارس	<b>practice</b>	تدريب	<b>practical</b>	عملي
<b>exist</b>	يوجد	<b>existence</b>	وجود	<b>existent</b>	موجود
<b>find</b>	يجد	<b>Findings - find</b>	اكتشافات	<b>found</b>	اكتشف
<b>conquer</b>	يغزو	<b>conqueror</b>	غازي	<b>conquering</b>	غازي
		<b>intelligence</b>	ذكاء	<b>Intelligent</b>	ذكي
<b>treat</b>	يعالج	<b>treatment</b>	علاج	<b>treatable</b>	قابل للعلاج
<b>summarise</b>	يلخص	<b>summary</b>	ملخص		
<b>explore</b>	يستكشف	<b>exploration</b>	استكشاف	<b>explored</b>	مستكشف
<b>measure</b>	يقيس	<b>measurement</b>	قياس	<b>measured</b>	تم قياسه
<b>assist</b>	يساعد	<b>assistant- assistance</b>	مساعد - مساعدة	<b>assistant</b>	مساعد

**Antonyms**

<b>Word</b>		<b>Antonym</b>	
<b>convenient</b>	ملائم	<b>inconvenient</b>	غير ملائم
<b>useful</b>	مفيد	<b>useless</b>	بلا فائدة
<b>local</b>	محلي	<b>general- public</b>	عام
<b>well-known</b>	مشهور / معروف	<b>unknown</b>	غير معروف

successful	ناجح	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
practical	عملي	impractical	غير عملي
essential	لازم	inessential	غير لازم
existent	موجود	nonexistent	غير موجود
Intelligence	ذكاء	stupidity	غباء
Artificial	صناعي	natural	طبيعي
advances	تقدم	Regress - fall back	تخلف
dependent	معتمد علي	independent	مستقل
implement	ينفذ	exempt	يُثني عن / يفتح بالعدول عن
approach	يقرب	retreat	يبعد
spectacular	شاكِر - مقدر	humdrum	غير مقدر
traditional	تقليدي	nontraditional	حديث
effective	مؤثر - فعال	ineffective	غير مؤثر - غير فعال
mass-produced	منتج ضخمة	Adapted- tailored	محدود
special	خاص	Ordinary - common	عام
powerful	قوي	powerless	بلا قوة
trained	مدرب	unskilled	غير مدرب
agreement	اتفاق	disagreement	اختلاف
advantages	مميزات	disadvantages	عيوب
visible	مرئي	invisible	غير مرئي
war	حرب	peace	سلام

## Synonyms

Word	Synonyms	
essential	Fundamental -major - main	لازم - ضروري
exist	Occur - subsist -live	يوجد
court	Field pitch	ملعب
Innovate	Create devise improve renew	يبدع
practical	Functional- workable	عملي
Intelligence	Cleverness - wit - cuteness - brilliance	ذكاء
Artificial	Synthetic - made-up - fabricated - invented	صناعي
depend	Rely - count -lean	يعتمد
implement	Perform- execute - carry out -fulfill	ينفذ
surround	Ring - circle - embrace - wrap	يحيط
approach	Oncoming - coming near	يقرب
spectacular	Stunning - amazing - astonishing	مدهش
traditional	Conventional - classic - imitative	تقليدي
special	private - specific - individual - personal - distinctive	خاص
powerful	strong - sturdy	قوي
device	system - equipment -appliance -will	جهاز
devise	innovate - engineer- project	يبتكر

#####3

## Language Notes

1- make (مفعول) + مصدر - The strict teacher makes his students respect him.

**make** ( مفعول ) + صفة - Your success **makes me happy**.

- I **was made ( to go - go )** to school as there was an important exam. (to في المجهول تأخذ )

- **allow** + مصدر + **to** + مفعول

\* **allow + ing** بدون مفعول + الفعل

\* **let + مفعول + to** مصدر بدون

- He **didn't allow** them **to smoke**.

- He **didn't allow** smoking.

-He **didn't let** them smoke.

## 2- **too.....to**

**too** ..... مصدر ... **to** ..... صفة / ظرف

جدا لدرجة أن لا ( نفي )

'Surround sound' was **too expensive to implement** on a big scale

- The test was **too difficult to answer**.

- He speaks **too quietly to hear**

- **So** ..... **that** ..... صفة / ظرف

جملة نتيجة

جدا لدرجة أن

- The boy was **so clever that** he got high marks.

The play **was so good that** I watched it all.

**Such** ..... **that** ..... اسم جمع / مفرد لا يعد + صفة

جملة نتيجة

جدا لدرجة أن

- She is **such a tall girl that** she claimed the tree easily

- It is **such expensive furniture that** we can't buy it.

## 3- **ALL**

1- يأتي بعد (all) اسم مفرد لا يعد أو اسم جمع و تشير إلى المجموعة ككل و بوجه عام.

- **All cheese** is good.

2- الفعل بعد (all) مفرد أو جمع علي حسب الاسم الذي يأتي بعدها.

- All **water** in the fridge **was drunk**.

- All my **friends are** helpful.

3- إذا جاءت (the) أو (صفة ملكية) أو صفة إشارة بعد (all), يمكن أن نضع بينهما (of) و تشير إلى اسم محدد.

- **All of the birds** flew away.

- I've invited **all my friends** to the party.

- I like **all my friends**.

- **whole**

( كل الشيء ) ( كامل ) ( ليس ناقص )

—He ate **the whole cake**

معناها هنا انه اكل كيكاً واحدة كاملة لم اترك منها شيء

I spent **a whole day** on the beach

يمكن يجي قبلها **the** او **a** عادي فصيح نقول

**my whole life**

ممكن نستخدم قبلها صفات الملكية

**A whole new approach** has been developed by scientists at a university in Germany.

**A printing process** can print **whole rolls** of the paper-thin speakers.

## 4-

**Because**

**as**

**Since**

الجملة الأولى ( النتيجة )

( فعل + فاعل ) الجملة الثانية +

1- Ali was very unhappy **because** he **didn't succeed**.

2- **As** he was ill, he went to the doctor.

3- **Since** she was wise, she could solve the problem.

ولكن

الجملة الأولى →

**because of / due to/ owing to / for / on account of / thanks to /**

**Noun v. ing**

- He went to the doctor **because of being ill**.

- She could solve the problem **due to her wisdom/ being wise**.

- The film was very successful **because of the amazing sound quality**

-

5- **Thank you for asking** your question



- We can get a lot of information **thanks to the internet.**

**Like / unlike / as / alike / such as:**

\* **like +** (مثل) (للتشبيه شيء غير حقيقي) ضمير/اسم + صفه /اسم

\* He works like a machine. \* She ran like a mad dog. \* Do you still write like this?

\* **unlike :** على عكس

\* **Unlike her sister,** Salma is hard-working and studious.

\* She has blue eyes **unlike her mother.**

\* **as +** (حقيقه) +وظيفة

\* My father works **as a doctor.** \* Do this experiment **as I do it.**

\* train / work / act + as + : وظيفة

\* He trained **as a lawyer** for three years.

**such as = like +** مثل كذكر امثله

\* Team sports like **(such as) football and basketball** are based on teamwork and cooperation

-They forget about simple things **like walking in nature** and being with friends.

-Taha Hussein wrote a lot of books **(like- as )** " The days "

**-alike** مشابه - على السواء

-The two children are very alike

6- **like** (مثل) (للتشبيه) - Ola sings **like Om kolthom.**

**as** (ك) (للحقيقة) - My father **works as a teacher.** He is a teacher.

7-

will + (المصدر)

When- after-before

till- until- as – if- Once مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام

Since-as soon as

When I **get up,** I'll phone you. – He **won't come** until he **finishes** his work.

**Until we have invented the technology to get other planets, we won't be able to study the conditions there**

I will phone you **once,** I go home

**Once we have finished exploring Mars, we 'll probably find other places that have life.**

8. We'll **keep using** the technology **in the future.**

9- **One of +** اسم جمع **+is to** المصدر

**One of the most important things is to find a planet with water**

10-

**But – however – yet – still**

**Although** . هذه الروابط لا بد أن تأتي في وسط الجملة قبل شيء مختلف أو على النقيض من شيء قد جاء قبله و هي عكس و تعني لكن أو مع ذلك

**Although I studied hard, I only got 70%.**

① I studied hard, **but** I only got 70%.

② He studied hard. **However,** he got low marks.

③ He is short, **yet** he joins the army.

④ You aren't rich; **still,** you could do something to help him

Mars is the closest planet to Earth. **However,** the temperature on it is minus 60 degrees Celsius

**However** تأتي في أول الجملة بمعنى بالرغم من

الجملة الثانية + فعل + فاعل + ظرف أو صفة + **However**

1- However clever he was, he couldn't answer the question.

2- However fast he ran, he missed the record.

11- help ( مصدر فقط ) أو ( مصدر ) + to + ( مفعول )

- The teacher **helps** the society **to build** ( **build** ) it.

- Technology has **helped** save lives in Mexico

- I can't help **watching** Zamalik's match on TV لا أستطيع أن منع نفسي من

12. **and=In addition** بالإضافة إلى ذلك + جملة

• We went shopping **and visited** some friends.

• We went shopping. **In addition, we** visited some friends.

• **In addition to + v- ing** = **Besides + v-ing** بالإضافة إلى = **As well as**

• **Besides going shopping**, we visited some friends.

• **In addition to going shopping**, we visited some friends.

• **As well as going shopping**, we visited some friends.

لاحظ أن الفاعل واحد في الجملتين في المثال السابق

• إذا استخدمت **as well as** في ربط جملتين يختلف فيهما الفاعل ، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

• I am very keen on politics. My brother is very keen on politics.

**I as well as my brother am** very keen on politics.

13- **astronaut** رائد فضاء

- **astronomer** عالم فلك

- **astrologer** منجم

- The person who travels into outer space.

- The person who studies stars and planets.

- The person who predicts the future.

14- **electrical** ( صفة ) كهربائي أو يتعامل مع الكهرباء لوصف الاعطال ( اشخاص – معدات )

- **electrical** (equipment / wires / appliances / fault / engineer / device / fuse) / storm

- **electric** ( صفة ) الأجهزة التي تعمل بالكهرباء

- **electric** ( car / washing machine / kettle / guitar / current / light / oven / iron / fan / fire)

- **an electrician** ( اسم ) فني كهرباء We need an electrician to repair our electrical equipment.

**Electricity** -الكهرباء we can't do without electricity in our life.

**Electrician** -عامل فني كهرباء A company needs four elhectricians to be employed

**Electrician** -عامل فني كهرباء A company needs four electricians to be employed

15- **contact** ( يتصل ب بدون حرف جر ) - **contact with** ( اتصال ب ويأتي بعدها حرف جر )

- They **contacted earth** - She moved to Spain and I **lost contact with** her.

- **connect** يربط بين شيئين – يوصل بسلك

She **connected** her computer **to the printer**.

Cairo metro **connects** many parts of Cairo together

16- **explore** يستكشف - I want to explore that old desert building .

- **invent** يخترع - Graham Bill invented the telephone.

- **discover** يكتشف - Isaac Newton discovered gravity.

23- **Affect – Effect**

• **Affect (V.)** يؤثر على = **have an effect ( impact ) ( influence ) on** يكون له تأثير على

• I was deeply affected by the film. • The film **had a deep effect on** me.

-Smoking **affects our health** badly. - Smoking **has a bad effect on** our health.

24. **device** جهاز \*\* **advise** نصيحة \*\* **device** ببتكر \*\* **advances** تطورات

- Mobiles are excellent devices - Scientists devised a new way to diagnoses cancer

25- **require** يتطلب - يستلزم **acquire** يكتسب **inquire** يسأل

-The college **acquired a reputation** for very high standards.

The project **requires considerable investment**.

We rang the hospital again **to inquire** how the old man was.

26- **process** عملية تغييرات - أحداث (صناعية- طبيعیه-كیمیائیة - تعليمیه ) سلسلة خطوات لاتمام شيء

- **process** - عملية البناء لضوئي **Photosynthesis process** -عملية (طبيعية أو صناعية) **peace process**

Steel forms by **a slow process of chemical change**.

Tablets can help the **learning process**.

- **Operation** عملية انجاز لشركه او منظمه ( نشاط او عمل -عملیه جراحیه - عملیه تشغیل

- **operation** - يجري عملية علي **operate on** -عملية جراحية / عسكرية / تجارية

- **operate machines** - عمل / تشغيل **operation** - يشغل الات -عملية مخابرات **intelligence operation**

She's going to need **an operation on her ankle**.

The firm set up its own property **development operation**

The device has a single button, **allowing for easy operation**.

27- **Special** (= not ordinary) خاص - مميز ( لا يمتلكه الانسان )

**Special care** رعاية خاصة **special attention** اهتمام خاصا **special occasion** مناسبة خاصة

-The government gives **special care** to reclaiming the desert.

-This is **a special kind of cloth**.

- **private** (opposite: public عام) خاص ويمتلكه شخص ( ملكية خاصة )

**a private school** مدرسه خاصه بفلوس **a private hospital** مستشفى خاص بفلوس

Our house has **a private garden**. He didn't want to discuss **his private life**.

28- **rob** + يسرق شخص - مكان **rob somebody of something**

- A gang **robbed the bank** yesterday. They **robbed him** of his money.

- **steal** + مفعول يسرق الشيء كاملا

The thief **stole her bag** The thief stole my money

29- **Degree** درجة جامعيه او درجة حراره **Grade** درجة في امتحان او تقدير **Graded** متدرج

I have a degree in biology from Alexandria University

She always gets good grades. Jack is in the sixth grade.

These exercises are graded . Some of them are easier than others.

30- **average** معدل - متوسط

**on average** في المتوسط

**above average** فوق المتوسط

**below average** أقل من المتوسط

**On the whole** علي العموم

**On one hand** من جهة

**On the other hand** من جهة أخرى

**On balance** أجمالاً / بشكل عام

**On a bigger scale** علي نطاق أكبر

**Keep in touch** يداوم علي الاتصال

**Depend on** يعتمد علي

**Addicted to** مدمن لـ

## Security and safety

الأمن والأمان

On average

في المتوسط

31-- type

يطبع

- How quickly can you **type** on a computer?

type=kind=sort

نوع

- Papyrus is a **type** of grass.

32- space

فضاء

- a space = a place

مكان .

- a space of two hours

في مدي / مدة ساعتين

33 - audience

الجمهور (تأخذ فعل مفرد أو فعل جمع)

- The audience is ( are ) happy .

34- ( do / carry out / conduct / perform ) an experiment

يجري تجربة

experimental

تجريبي

35-rather than بدلا من - We should consider nuclear energy peaceful rather than destructive

- other than

بمخلاف / غير

None is at home other than Ahmed.

لا أحد في البيت غير أحمد

- other than

بالإضافة الي

- Nuclear energy is a peaceful means other than destructive ones

**LISTENING****Reading**

'Surround sound' is a **system** that uses 3 or more speakers to make you feel like you are '**surrounded**' by **sound**. **Surround sound** experiments go **as far back as the 1930s**. In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940 **in the Walt Disney Film Fantasia**, which used **Fantasound**. This was a **system designed** totally to immerse the **audience** in the film like the visuals did. Unfortunately, it was too expensive to **implement on a big scale**, as **Fantasound** needed 54 **speakers**. It wasn't until 1975, with the **invention** of Dolby Stereo, **requiring** just four basic speakers that '**surround sound**' became **practical**. It was used **spectacularly** in the film Star Wars. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the **introduction** of Dolby Surround technology. But this still **required** four speakers, making it expensive and **inconvenient**. Now, a whole new **approach** has been developed by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany. **Instead of** speakers, it uses paper. The team had **experimented** before; in 2015, they **created** an **illustrated** book which had speakers **hidden** inside the pages that made noises as readers turned them. Now they have developed a **printing process** which can **print whole rolls of the paper-thin speakers, rather than one sheet at a time**. They have used this to make the **T-ring, a 360-degree paper speaker**, a sound experience more **immersive** than even a cinema, and can be **potentially** mass-produced at a competitive price. **Professor Hubler**, from the University predicts that one major use of this new idea will be for **audio advertising** and **packaging**. Imagine the **packaging** on bottles and tins playing music or **advertises** at you in your **local supermarket!!**

~~~~~

www.curioussteen...





When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, is making the film **experience** even more real. In the 1970s, **a company called** IMAX took **a different approach**. large, **tall screens**. **Special speakers** were put behind the screen, which **helped to make** the sound better and louder. **In addition**, the films were made using **a special process** which made the pictures look much more 'real'.

The problem with these **types of films** was the cost. They had to **build special square** cinemas, because people **needed to watch** the film **in seats** which all **faced** the screen. You also needed **special cameras** and couldn't **make films** of more than an hour long. So these films were nearly all **educational**, often about **nature**. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded by snowy mountains.

Since 2000, however, similar technology has **allowed traditional films to be made** in the same way. These are **mass-produced** and shown **in traditional cinemas**. **As a result**, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D, so that the pictures look real and not flat. Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to **immerse** you even more into the **experience**. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to **'feel'** the film using smell, rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

#### **Possible future uses of AI**

**Experts** all agree that we will see more **artificial intelligence** (AI) in the future, but how will this **affect** our lives? Factories already use **AI** to build cars and machines. Work that **used to be done** by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop **assistants**. That means many shops and **businesses** won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours. When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you **advertisements** to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need **to be mass-produced**. Many people think that **self-driving cars will have replaced traditional cars** within the next few decades. We will all be calling **self-driving cars** to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today. Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing art or music **AI** will also help us to **communicate in any language**. Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to AI.

**The advantages and disadvantages** to evolving technology a **On the other hand**, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest phone, television or computer game, but that often **means throwing away** the old ones. You can **recycle** some parts of old **equipment**, but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

**On the one hand**, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good **as cinema screens**. Mobile phones mean that you

can be **connected to the internet** anywhere, so you can always find out information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

**On the whole**, it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can improve **our everyday lives**. **On balance**, however, I think that we have to a way to use new technology **on old equipment**. It is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the latest technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last for decades, we could have a cleaner, greener world.

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. **On a bigger scale**, computers in **businesses**, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more **powerful**. We now depend on everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

~~~~~

### EXERCISES

#### Mr El Sebaei Exercises on Unit Three تمرين الوحدة الثالثة Mr El Sebaei

- 1-My older brother has a **(decree – degree – licence – permission)** in Maths from Cairo University.
- 2-Oxygen is released in the **(result – series – process – sequence)** of photosynthesis.
- 3- Most of the food we buy is ( process – processed – pros – processing ) in some way
- 4-These bacteria are (visible – feasible – practical – invisible) unless viewed with a microscope
- 5-Exercise can have a **(positive – negative –conductive)** effect on your health and fitness.
- 6-My parents **(disappointed – depressed – discouraged – encouraged)** me to work hard at school.
- 7-I found work very difficult, but my friends were very **(mess- encouraging – managing- helping).**
- 8-It was a great football match. The teams played very **(negatively- badly- positively- cowardly).**
- 9-Students in the secondary schools are far too (immersed- plunged- skided- busy ) in their studying. They can't find time for fun.
- 10-The products of Toshiba are sold on a big (scale-scales-height- expand) all over the world. They are reliable.
- 11.Water will be the cause of many (worms-wars-spaces-dispute) among a lot of countries in the future. It has become rare.
- 12.You can ( do-create-find-fix) orange by mixing red and yellow.
13. 10- "( Mass -Miss -Much –More) produced "is a product made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine
- 14.Allah are the the( maker-creator-creator-inventor) of all the universe.
- 15.Thieves **(disappeared-hid-made- created)** the money they robbed in a cave.
- 16.I'd like to go home early(other-rather-farther-worse) than risk the roads at night.
- 17.Bridges are designed to connect places rather than( dividing-divide-to divide-divided)them

18. There were not any ( printed-printing-oral-writing) copies available from the publisher.
- 19- Water is essential for all life ( forms – plants – animals – things ). All creatures can't live without it.
20. Printing is a ( **method-style-away-shape** ) of writing when you write each letter separately **rather than joining** the letters of a word.
21. We stopped at the top of the mountain to admire ( review- sight- view- look ) of the sea.
22. (Fortunately-Unfortunately- Luckily-Personally), the old man died after a long term illness.
23. The money I paid to the hotel ( included-consisted-contained-constituted) the continental breakfast which I used to have every day.
24. There are modern cameras in the mall that (see-list-monitor-compare) everything that happens.
- 25- For his birthday party, Ali had a ( spectacularly -nervously -spectators -spectacles) big cake in the shape of the pyramids !
26. Unlike in the cinema, actors in the theater are in direct contact with their( kids-situations-centres-viewers).
27. We couldn't go out because the rain was( failing-pouring-sheeting-feeling) down all day long.
28. The ( papers-newspaper-sheet-peace) is a piece of paper for writing on or containing information.
29. "The Days" written by Taha Hussein is its 10th ( copies- printed-printing-inversions). It is a successful book.
30. Big food companies use ( tens-tins-cans-pots) to keep their products attractive and healthy.
31. This product is selling very well because the ( coverage- packaging-rolls-rules) is so attractive. People like it.
32. 58- On ( balance – bias – business – duty ) we can't do without technology now.
33. She ( deny- admitted-accused-imagined) that the man wanted to kill her. It wasn't true.
34. Parents should have a great ( affect- affection- impact-trustee ) on their children. They should try to persuade them to be polite with others.
35. The surround ( voice- noise- sound-cry ) makes us enjoy going to the cinemas. They add fun to the movies.
36. The president tries to ( applicant- implement-obey-carry ) a vital economic policy . It will improve our economy.
37. The hammer is the ( tools- equipment- implement-way) that the criminal used to kill his victim.
38. Factories want to earn more , so they use machines to (miss- mass-most- mess ) produce goods to make it in large quantities.
39. In 1980, Toyota launched the first (mess produced –mass production-mass produced-miss production ) mountain car. It has become popular.
40. It was my father's habit to ( meet- solution- go-approach ) every problem cautiously. He was careful enough not to cause any harm.
41. The Olympic committee should (contain - introduce - deduce - reduce) squash into the Olympic Games.

42. My mother bought a/an ( devise- device- advice-equipment ) for catching mice. Now we all feel calm
43. The company should arrange a ( suit- convenient-disturbed-late ) place and time for the meeting. All the members should attend.
44. My friend is deeply ( contained- include- involved-gone) in debt. The bank will inform the police about him.
45. You shouldn't ( put – contain- place -involve ) yourself in unnecessary expense. You need every pound for your daughter's marriage.
47. In the theatre, I changed my seat to get a complete ( review- view- sight- accident ) of the stage.
- 48- ( especially -spectacularly -boring –terrifying) means extremely good ,exciting or surprising.
- 49- ( In- On –At – Of ) the whole I think technology can be dangerous if you are addicted to it.
- 50-Technology helps us discover new cures ( of – with – for – about ) new diseases .
51. Some people's (reviews- views- sights- accidents ) on evolution is based on religion, not on scientific findings.
52. The criminal's video was (reviewed –sight- saw- viewed )by millions of people.
53. The company hired a powerful ( spokes- speaking- speaker-spoken ) to make all the members hear the financial budget.
54. The Egyptian Opera has expanded its ( reviewers- audiences-listeners-speakers) by singing songs from the shows.
- 55- A technician is someone who does ( physical-practical –oral- written )work in science or technology.
- 56- A ( producer -director -manager –principal) is someone who decides how a play, film etc. should be made.
- 57- ( Persian – Mandarin –English – Spanish ) is the language of the people of Iran.
- 58.( Astronomers-Astronauts- Astrologers- Pilots)have to undergo years of training before they can go into space.
- 59-Factories already use ( natural- normal-artificial - industrial )intelligence to build cars and machines to be sold.
- 60.-Some people are interested in finding out ( about- for-out-in ) the world they live in.
- 61- Nada wants to know everything . She is always ( curious – helpless – careless – priceless )
62. Some drivers have a sat-nav. ( arrangement-method- order – system )in their cars to help them find directions.
- 63.- Under our education ( order – discipline – system – arrangement ), you can choose the type of schooling that your child receives.
64. The computer's ( natural- normal-artificial - industrial ) intelligence can defeat even the most skilled player at chess.
- 65-We believe (experiments -experience -experiences -examples ) on animals should be banned.
- 66-This was a system designed totally to immerse the ( audio -audience -visuals -speaker ) in the film like the visuals did.
- 66- Unfortunately , the mobile was too expensive to implement on a large ( range -average – scale- principal)

- 67- It wasn't until 1975 that ( surrounds - surrounded – surrounding- surround ) sound became practical. A lot of companies began to use it.
- 68- The synonym of need is ( acquire – inquire – enquire – require )
- 69-The machine automatically ( downloads -carries -holds -bears ) the required information to his fax.
- 70- The officials in the airport ( monitor- conduct- make –notice ) planes on the radar for any sudden problems.
- 71-The government is trying to provide ( health- healthy-orally-regularly ) care to all the Egyptian people.
- 72- ( Drugs -Plants–Herbs-Cures ) are medicines or things that make medicines
- 73- ( Cure -Process -Operation -Diagnose)is when doctors cut open a body to help repair it or damaged part in it.
- 74-In the past, strong nations used to ( hit-attacked- conquer-help ) the weak ones and control them.
- 75- Nowadays, most young people try to have good physical ( fatness- fitness-obesity-height ) by going the gym a lot.
- 76- A lot of young people like reading science ( fiction-fictional-fiction-factual) stories. They think they are interesting.
- 77-The company should encourage ( fiction-innovation-laziness- treatment) if it is to remain competitive.
- 78-Many people feel bewildered **بمربك** by the speed of technological (innovation-creation-advanced- experiences ) . They can't keep up with them.
- 79- On a bigger ( scales – scale – school – scholar ), technology helped save lives in a lot of countries all over the world.
- 80-On the other ( hand – foot – arm – leg ) cyber security has become a big issue.
- 81- The boy works as an ( apprentice – engineer – electrician – architect ) for a carpenter. He wants to learn all the skills.
- 82- The Egyptian ( approach- progress- operation - experiences) to the crisis of corona virus was wise. It could treat with it wisely.
- 83- My father likes going to the ( cinema- theatre-beach-opera). He enjoys watching the plays of Adel Emam.
- 84- All over Egypt, you can see a lot of ( advertisements-pictures-reviews- views ) of films on the walls of houses in all streets.
85. Jobs can give writers ( experiences- experienced- experiments- experts) that they can use in their writing.
- 86.She has a ( visible- visual- seen- sight ) memory. She can remember well what she sees
- 87- As I ( approached - approximated -demolished -preached ) the house , I noticed a light on upstairs .
- 88-In ( factual – fact – actually – really ) , the technology is first introduced in 1940 .
- 89- A new ( punishment -bunch -bench -approach ) has been developed by scientists to use paper instead of speakers.
- 90- The adjective ( inconvenient -patient -cheerful –delighted) means causing difficulty or problems
- 91- A / An ( possess -confess –operation-process) is a series of actions or method of producing something



- 92- The ( process -covers- -cameras -speakers) on most phones are very good now. Music sounds loud and clear on them.
- 93-We are in need of a real reform in our educational ( surround -process -immerse - operation)
- 94-The enemy troops were ( around- surrounded-roll-ruled ) by our troops from all the sides They can't escape.
95. Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out ( permanent-permanently-temporary- temporarily) during an eclipse.
- 96.My brother wants a ( permanent- temporary -quick- possess) job for the months of summer in a hotel in Sharm.
- 97.Printing is a method of writing when you write each letter separately rather than (join-joining - joined-joins )the letters of a word.
- 98.Ali drew some unknown figures on the ( papers-newspaper-sheet-peace) given to him.
99. This product has become edible due to the damaged( coverage- packaging-rolls-rules)
- 100- A/**An (collector - inspector - conductor - investigator)** is someone whose job is to check that something is of a good enough standard and that rules are being obeyed
- 101- That film was made by a famous **( directions- director - directory - directive ).**
- 102- Our children should ( blame - become - behave - be half ) well in front of the strangers and try not to make noise .
- 103- The spider uses his ( web - leg - tail - nose ) to catch insects.
- 104- A bee stung me in the face, so I got( brown - green -black - red ) eye .
- 105 - My father had an (argument -fights - arrangement - encouragement) with my mother about home expenses so she was sad.
- 106-The rural environment has a **(positive -possessive - repressive - stressful)** effect on children's health.
- 107-Parents play an important **(rail - reel - rule - role)** in their child's learning.
- 108-The house is not really **(convient -syllable - recyclable - suitable)** for a large family.
- 109-Public health officials were called to **(respect - inspect - reveal - destroy)** the building.
- 110-Dr Aisha wrote many books and articles **( on - of - for - in )** cultural and religious matters.
- 111- We saw a film being made by a famous (writer - author -director - plumber ) today!
- 112 .( Astronomers-Astronauts- Astrologers- Pilots)travel into space by spaceships .
- 113- He is specialised in physics .He is a (physician - physicist - physical - psychologist )
- 114- This phone doesn't work. It is completely ( useful - use - used- useless )
- 115- Ahmed worked really hard for the exam. We are ( useful-hopeful- hopeless - useless ) that he has done very well.
- 116- My grandfather was ill, but the doctor gave him some ..... medicine and now  
a) powerful                      b) power                      c) powerless                      d) powder .
117. A/An (operation - experiment - process - illness) is a series of events or changes that happen naturally.
118. (As - The same - Like - Likely) most people, he thought that plants get their food from soil.
119. Ageing الشيخوخة is the natural (operation - recess - process - experience) of getting old.
- 120(-Astronomers- Astrologers- Doctors)Astronauts usually work in weightless conditions.
- 120(Astronomers- Astrologers- Doctors-Astronauts )can predict when the eclpsies happen and also the climatic conditions..
- 121- Most of the students depend ( in - on - about - of ) the internet to do research .
- 122-The internet helps me to keep ( in - on - of - at ) touch with my relatives abroad.

123-If you get an -----, you learn while you are doing a job.

- a) application      b) apprenticeship      c) archaeology      d) identity

124- Technology ( evolves – revolves – solves – dissolves ) ever day .

125- Please , clean the table because it is ( tidy – clear – dusty – mist )

126- You should repaint the house as it is ----- and dark.

- a) gloomy      b) cheerful      c) delighted      d) bright

127- To ----- is to involve yourself deeply in something.

- a) immense      b) mince      c) immerse      d) commerce

128- The shops are -----big buildings. It is the only small building in the road.

- a) selected      b) decorated by      c) surrounded by      d) painted by

129-The play was so good that I was totally -----in the story. I forgot I was in a theatre!

- a) contained      b) included      c) immersed      d) fainted

130-They have not yet -----the new metro line , so I still take the bus .

- a) planted      b) implemented      c) rejected      d) eliminated

131-The wood goes though a/an -----which turns it into paper.

- a) operation      b) occupation      c) process      d) profession

132-All the trains were cancelled , which was very -----, as I couldn't get to the college

- a) comfortable      b) convenient      c) delightful      d) inconvenient

133-Plastic toys are very cheap because thousands of them are ----- in factories daily.

- a) mass-produced      b) neglected      c) ignored      d) thrown

134-To ----- is to start using something.

- a) implement      b) complain      c) compare      d) compliment

135- To ----- use scientific methods to find something .out or discover something

- a)experience      b) experiment      c) explanation      d) inclusion

136 The ----- is a device through which sound comes out.

- a) speaker      b) spokesman      c) beaker      d) spokes

137- To ----- is to be all around ( someone or something )

- a) surrender      b) sound      c) summon      d) surround

138-An / a ----- is a way of viewing or doing something .

- a) porch      b) parchment      c) approach      d) ambush

139-The science teacher is going to ----- an experiment in the laboratory .

- a) make      b) performance      c) do      d) carry.

140-( Astronauts – Accountants – Astrologers - Engineers) are well trained to do space walks.

141- They can print whole rolls of the paper-thin speakers ( other – rather – and – neither than one sheet at a time.

142- It is hot today .The temperature exceeds 40 Celsius ( grades – marks – points – degrees )

143-Can I have a ( ten – tan – tin – ton ) of tuna , please ? I am hungry .

144- Scientists have found a more practical way (for- of-off-to ) produce a surround sound .

145-What applications do you think the new paper-thin ----- might have?

- a) cinema      b) radio      c) screens      d) speakers

146- I 'd like to be an astronaut as I think space ----- is very important .

- a) technical      b) technician      c) technology      d) phonology

147-the earth is one of the eight ----- of our solar system.

- a) stars      b) planets      c) plants      d ) pants

148 - -----have been able to study most of these planets for many years.

- a) Astronomers      b) Astrologers      c) Astronauts      d) Students

- 149- We can send ..... further than the moon.  
a) astrology      b) astrologers      c) astronauts      d) scouts
- 150- Scientists have already sent ..... onto the surface of planets such as Mars.  
a) canoes      b) boats      c) ferries      d) spacecraft
- 151- With each journey to space, we can learn more and more about the-----around us.  
a) towns      b) cities      c) village      d) universe
- 152- ----- means something to try and make you feel better when you are ill.  
a) Process      b) Operation      c) Tournament      d) Treatment
- 153- A ----- is a piece of equipment that can find or measure light , heat ,sound etc.  
a) thermometer      b) sensor      c) telescope      d)stethoscope
- 154- Scientists all agree that we will see more -----intelligence (AI)in the future .  
a) false      b) synthetic      c) artificial      d) superficial
- 155-Astronmers are constantly searching ----- planets which may support human life.  
a) about      b) for      c) with      d) on
- 165- Nobody watched the match ( other - rather - and - neither ) than Tamer.

### أشكال و أزمنة المستقبل FUTURE FORMS AND TENSES

#### 1) WILL + INF.

- 1- تستخدم (Will) للتنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل  
- I expect she **will get a good job** soon.      - I think it **will rain** tomorrow..  
- I expect Egypt **will achieve** progress in all fields..      - I think Ali **will buy** the computer.
- 2- تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية  
- This school **will be 50 years** old next year      - I am 18. Next year, I **will be** 19 years old.
- 3 - كما تستخدم لاتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما  
- Someone's at the door. **I'll see** who it is      - I'm hungry. I think I **will have** a sandwich..  
- That's the phone. I **will answer** it.

لاحظ أيضا ان اتخاذ القرارات السريسه تأخذ مستقبل بسيط وليس (going to)

- I have decided now that I (**will-am-going-to**) travel to Cairo
- 4- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة ما  
- **I'll wash** the dishes      - **I'll fix** the car for you.
- 5 - عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء  
- **Will you help** me carry this bag, please?      - **I hope you will look** after the baby.
- 6 - الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق  
- **I will meet** my friends this evening.
- 7 - عمل الوعود والتهديدات  
- **I'll buy** you a computer when you **pass** the final exam.  
- You **won't get** your prize if you **come** late.

8- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية و أدوات الشرط.

After/ As soon as/ When / Before / once By the time	(مضارع بسيط) او (مضارع تام)	مستقبل + Will+ inf
+ will (won't) + فاعل مصدر مصدر / don't مصدر	Till/until	(مضارع بسيط) او (مضارع تام) (

يستخدم بعد الروابط الاتية :

I **won't be able to write** the report until **I've done** the research.

**Once I've done** the research, **I'll start** the report.

- Normal people **won't travel** in space **until** it **has become** less expensive.
- People **won't buy** electric cars until they **have discovered** a way for them to go longer distances without being charged.
- When **I've fixed** my computer, **I'll help** you with your research.
- **As soon as/When** Ali **gets** home, he **will have** dinner
- He **won't leave** **until** his sister **arrives/has arrived**
- **Don't press** this button until the light **turns** green.

9- توزيع الوظائف و المهام والادوار (بين المتحدث و افراد اخرين)

\* You sweep the floor and I **will cook** the dinner.

\* You do the typing and I **will check** it later.

## 5. الكلمات الدالة

- نستخدم **will** بعد الافعال والظروف والتعابير الاتية :

<p><b>predict-expect -hope- think – believe – promise – wonder - suppose</b>  <b>Probably-possibly- certainly- perhaps – maybe -</b>  <b>Be sure –be afraid –it is probable –it's certain –it's possible- I don't think</b></p>	<p>افعال ظروف تعابير</p>
<p><b>tomorrow - next (week/month/year) – in the future - soon - in 2030 -</b></p>	<p>كلمات</p>

## 2) FUTURE CONTINUOUS

المستقبل المستمر

**Form :** ***will be + v.ing***

- **This time next week, I will be travelling** to Cairo.
- **Don't ring at 8 o'clock. I'll be having** dinner with my family.
- You'll recognize me when you get there. **I'll be wearing** jeans and a white t-shirt.
- **I'll be sitting** at a table at the corner and reading a newspaper.

1- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتنبؤ بحدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت ما أو خلال فترة محددة في المستقبل

- **I'll be playing** tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
- The government **will be trying** to reduce the effects of climate change.
- 2- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)
- **I will be waiting** for you when your bus arrives.
- **I'll be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and you *need* to contact me.
- **He will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Ola when she *arrives*.
- 3- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا في نفس الوقت في المستقبل. (توازي)
- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** *while* Sarah **will be dancing**.
- I **will be working** hard next week *while* you **will be relaxing** on the beach.
- 4- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن
- Don't call him now, **he'll be doing** his homework.
- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they **ll be cleaning** their house at the moment.

5- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة ( أفعال الحواس والادراك والفهم -----).

- Maher **will be** at my house when **you arrive**. (Not: ~~will be being~~)
- **After I study**, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: ~~will be knowing~~)

### MAY BE + V.ING

- يستخدم ( **may be v.ing** ) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة في المستقبل

- I can't visit you because I **will / may be doing** my homework this evening.
- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.
- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

### 3) THE FUTURE PERFECT

### المستقبل التام

1- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقت معين في المستقبل

- By the end of next year, the government **will have built** a new school in the village.
- The population of the world **will have grown** to about nine billion to by 2050?
- They **will have finished** the English course in two months' time.

2- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل

- Before they come, we **will have cleaned** up the house.
- John **will have eaten** the whole cake, by the time the birthday party starts
- 3- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time

- By next Monday / by 2025 .... etc.) حينئذ

- Before (four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)

- By next Wednesday, I **will have done** a science test.

- **By the time** I am twenty-two, I **will have finished** my university degree.

( **will have been + pp** )

4- يتكون المستقبل التام في المبني للمجهول من

- This school **will have been built** by 2030.

### 4) BE + GOING TO + INF.

1- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن أحداث تم اتخاذ قرار بشأنها من قبل.

- A: What are **your plans** for the next weekend? - B: **I'm going to play** computer games.

2- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود دليل. نראה أو نعرفه أو نسمعه مع كلمات **believe/**

**/think**

- The other team's players are very big. **It's going to be** a difficult match.

- I think **it's going to rain** because the sky seems very cloudy.

- There are a lot of clouds. I think It **is going to rain**.

- Look at this reckless driver! He **is going to crash** into the car in front.

- Hassan's playing really well. **He's going to win** the game!

- It's near the end and it's 3-0 for Egypt. We **are going to win the game!**

- It's six a.m. and it's already 25°C. It **is going to be very hot today**

/ take care /look!/ watch out ! /lookout!: أو شى على وشك الحدث أو مع كلمات التحذير أو التنبيه  
- Watch out!

- **Watch out!** The baby **is going to** fall.

-How pale **that girl is!** **I believe / I think/ she is going to faint**

-He can't swim. He is going to drown.

**Will** ولكن الصفات الثابتة والمهارات للإنسان ليس دليلا على حدوث الفعل فناخذ

E.g.1- Messi is **a clever player**. I think he **will score** a goal the next match.

2- Hamdi is very fast. I think **he will be** in the Olympic Games one day!

3- Sara is **a good student** .I think she **will pass** all her exams.

ولكن لاحظ المواقف المؤقتة تعتبر ادلة واضحة

\* My brother is revising well. I think he's going to pass the test.

3-يستخدم عند وجود كلمات ( **made up...mind intend /intention/plan /decide/ made decision/** )

Ex- A: What are your **plans** for the next weekend?

- B: **I'm going to play** computer games.

### 5) THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS المضارع المستمر

(**am / is / are + v.ing**)

1 -يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة ، و يدل علي ذلك كلمات مثل:

**arranged /made arrangements / prepared / booked /packed reserved / got / bought**

e.g. - He has **arranged** everything. **He's spending his holiday in Paris**.

They **are flying to** Paris next Friday. They **bought the tickets**

- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارع المستمر

- **He's getting married** next Friday.

2-يستخدم مع المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد والزواج وسفر وزيارات ومواعيد شخصية وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات

e.g. **He's getting married** next Friday. We **are giving a party** tomorrow for Ali's birthday.

The school inspector **is coming** on Thursday.

3- يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع هذه الافعال التي تستلزم ترتيبات

**a party leave/(have/give) /go /come/ visit=see /meet/ travel /see/ stay/fly /arrive)** يقيم

- I'm meeting them on Saturday.

- They're going tomorrow.

I'm doing a test next Monday. Our class is visiting a museum tomorrow

-We're eating dinner in the restaurant carriage this evening

### 6) THE PRESENT SIMPLE

المضارع البسيط

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بجدول مواعيد ثابتة : وسائل المواصلات و المسرح و السينما و المدرسة .....الخ

- The train **leaves** at six o'clock tomorrow.

- The night programme of the cinema **starts** at 12 am.

-





27-She has decided that she (is studying – is going to study – was studying – will be studying)

28-Be careful! You (will spill – are spilling - are going to spill – spill) your coffee.

29-That's the phone. I (answer – am answering – would answer – will answer) it.

30- By ten o'clock tonight, I ( finish – am finishing – will finish -'ll have finished ) all my homework.

31.We can't use classroom 5 tomorrow as they (will paint- will have painted-are painting-paint ) the walls

32-It is very hot in the house. I ( am turning –turn- will turn - am going to turn) on the air conditioner!

33-A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It (will be- is-was- is being ) busy today

34.Your bags look heavy. I (will help-am helping-help-will be helping) you to carry them.

35.The teacher says that we (study-are studying-are going to study ) relative clauses next week.

36.My grandfather (is being- will be-is going to- wil have been ) 70 on his next birthday!

37. I'll call you when I ( arrive- arrives- will arrive-am arriving) at my hotel.

38- The bridge ( will be built- will have been built- will build) across the river by next January.

39- When you get off the train, I ( are waiting- will have waited- will be waiting) for you by the ticket machine.

40- By 2030, scientists will (have invented-invent-be inventing) glasses on which we watch videos.

41- In 2030. we will (wear-be wearing-be worn- have worn) the same clothes.

42- Don't come round at six o'clock. I will still ( do- doing-have done-e doing ) my homework.

43- I'm sure you (spend-will spend-are spending-will have dpent) a lovely time in Italy next year.

45- My sister is pregnant. She ( is going to have- will have had- will have- will be having)a baby.

46-Don't be late , the bus ..... At exactly ten o'clock.

a- Leaves                      b- going to leave                      c- has left                      d- left

47- It's 35 degrees and it's only 7 a.m. It ..... very hot today.

a was                      b is going to be                      c is being                      d will be

48- They .....a party next week. Everything is arranged.

a. have                      b. are having                      c. are going to have                      d. have had

49-Our last lesson ..... at two o'clock this afternoon.

a-is finishing                      b-will finish                      c-finishes                      d-going to finish

50- There are a lot of people in the room. It..... difficult to find a chair.

a-is                      b-will be                      c-is going to be                      d- will have been

51-Look, there's a sandstorm. I ..... the windows.

a-will close                      b-close                      c-am gong to close                      d-am closing

52-There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it..... very hot.

a- is going to be                      b- will be                      c- is being                      d- is

53- I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I..... be sick.

- a should                      b am going to                      c am to                      d. will

54- We ..... married next month. Would you like to come to the wedding?

- a-will have got                      b-are getting                      c-will get                      d-got

55- I think it ..... be hot tomorrow.

- a is                      b is going to                      c will be                      d going to

56- He .....work in an hour. He has arranged it with his boss.

- a. is leaving                      b. is going to leave                      c. will leave                      d. leaves

57. The film ..... at 7.30 this evening.

- a- starts                      b- will start                      c- started                      d- is starting

58- She.....an engineer when she leaves university. That is her plan,

- a- will become                      b- has become                      c- is going to become                      d- becomes

59- Someone's at the door. I.....who it is

- a- am seeing                      b- will see                      c- am going to see                      d- see

60. There's a book club meeting after school and everyone.....there.

- a) is going to go                      b) will go                      c) are going to go                      d) goes

61. The train to Cairo is on platform four and it .....in thirty minutes.

- a) is leaving                      b) will be leaving                      c) leaves                      d) will leave

62. We.....a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

- a) will have                      b) going to have                      c) are having                      d) have

63-Take your umbrella with you or you ..... wet.

- a) get                      b) will get                      c) are getting                      d) would get

64. He hasn't studied hard. I think he.....this exam.

- a- will fail                      b- fails                      c- is going to fail                      d- failed

65. I expect Ahmed .....through his exams.

- a- is getting                      b- is going to get                      c- will get                      d- would get

66. Go and see that film. I'm sure that you.....it.

- a- will enjoy                      b- are enjoying                      c- are going to enjoy                      d- enjoy

67. Look out! The rock is loose. It.....on your head.

- a- is going to fall                      b- will fall                      c- is falling                      d- falls

68. I think it ..... rain because the sky is really dark.

- a) is going to rain                      b) is raining                      c) rains                      d) will rain

69. The earth is very crowded. People.....on the moon.

- a. are living                      b. will live                      c. live                      d. are going to live

70. Watch out! The baby ..... .

- a. will fall                      b. is falling                      c. is going to fall                      d. will be fallen

71- I'm sure the match.....really exciting.

- a. will be                      b. is being                      c. is going to be                      d. would be

72- I've have decided that I .....part in the next competition.

- a. going to take                      b. will take                      c. am taking                      d. take

73.Drive faster! If you don't hurry up, she..... the baby by the time we get to the hospital.

- a) will have                      b) will have had                      c) will be having                      d) is having

74.The mechanic .....repairing your car by the end of the week.

- a) will finish                      b) will have finished                      c) will be finishing                      d) is finishing

75.We ..... studying this book by the end of this year.

- a) finish                      b) will be finishing                      c) will have finished                      d) are finishing

76.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, we..... tennis.

- a) are playing                      b) will be playing                      c) will have played                      d) played

77.Tomorrow we're playing tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 5 o'clock, we..... tennis.

- a) are playing                      b) will be playing                      c) will have played                      d) played

78. I predict that in the future mobile phones..... much smaller.

- a) were                      b) are going to be                      c) are                      d) will be

79. I'm going on holiday on Saturday. This time next week I..... on a beach.

- a) am going to lie                      b) am lying                      c) will lie                      d) will be lying

80. At one o'clock tomorrow, I..... lunch with my friends.

- a) was eating                      b) eating                      c) will be eating                      d) ate

81. By ten o'clock tonight, I..... all my homework.

- a) will do                      b) will have done                      c) do                      d) will be doing

82. Let's eat dinner when John..... here.

- a) gets                      b) will get                      c) will have get                      d) get

83. Experts think that Cairo ..... by more than half a million people next year.

- a) will grow                      b) will have grown                      c) will be growing                      d) grows

84. I'm going to the airport in a minute. My plane ..... at ten o'clock.

- a) leave                      b) is leaving                      c) leaves                      d) will leave

85. Wake me up by nine o'clock - I..... long enough by then.

- a) will sleep                      b) have slept                      c) will be sleeping                      d) will have slept

86. Look, I can give you a lift to the station because I..... that way anyway.

- a) won't drive                      b) will have driven                      c) drives                      d) will be driving

87. My family ..... me out today for passing my exams.

- a) are taking                      b) take                      c) will take                      d) had taken

88. My brother Karim ..... law at Cairo University next year.

- a) has studied                      b) will study                      c) is going to study                      d) will have studied

89. By the time my brother is 30, he ..... a successful lawyer!

- a) is becoming                      b) becomes                      c) will have become                      d) has become

90. In the future, computers..... traditional books.

- a) will replace                      b) will be replaced                      c) will be replacing                      d) will be replaced

91. In the future most of our work ..... by machines.

- a) will be doing                      b) has been done                      c) will be                      d) will be done

92. By the time we get to the stadium. The match.....

- a) will have started                      b) was starting                      c) is starting                      d) had started

93. In the future, every new book will probably be..... as an e-book.

- a) publish                      b) publishing                      c) published                      d) publishes

94. We hope that the road..... early morning traffic.

- a) is reducing                      b) will have been reduced                      c) will be reduced                      d) will reduce

95. She's going to look for a job as soon as she ..... in London.

- a) arrive                      b) have arrived                      c) will arrive                      d) arrives

96. There won't be anyone in the office. Everyone..... home.

- a) will be going                      b) will have gone                      c) go                      d) have gone

97. This time tomorrow, we'll be celebrating because we ..... our exams.

- a) will finish                      b) will have finished                      c) will be finishing                      d) are finishing

98. By the time you get home, I..... the house from top to bottom.

- a) will clean                      b) will be cleaning                      c) will have cleaned                      d) am cleaning

99. I expect that Zamalik ..... the league. They have the best players and trainer in Egypt.

- a) win                      b) are going to win                      c) will win                      d) are winning

100. -For being strong-minded, she..... easily.

- a) won't persuade                      b) won't be persuaded                      c) isn't going to persuade                      d) is being persuaded

## Translatin

يعكس تحسين اقتصادنا نتائج إيجابية على حياة المواطن المصري

1. Improving our economy reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.

2. Improving our economic reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.

3. Improving our economy reflects negative results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.

4. Improving our economy reflects positive results on the life's of the Egyptian citizen.

يجب أن لا نقف مكتوفى اليدين ونلقى بالعبء على الحكومة وحدها فى حل المشاكل.

1. We should stand idly and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.

2. We should stand idly and put the burden on the government lone to solve problems.

3. We shouldn't stand idly and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.
4. We shouldn't stand ideal and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.

**تجتنب الديانات السماوية على التسامح والخوة وتبذ العنف.**

1. Heavenly religions urges us for tolerance, brotherhood and non-violence.
2. Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brotherhood and violence.
3. Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brother and non-violence.
4. Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brotherhood and non-violence.

**يجب أن نرشد أستهلكنا من المياه وإل سوف نواجه مشكلت خطيرة في المستقبل القريب.**

1. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
2. We must not rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
3. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will not face serious problems in the near future.
4. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will hand serious problems in the near future.

**نعد المشكلة السكانية أخطر المشاكل التي نواجه بلدنا في الوقت الحالي.**

1. The population problem are the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
2. The pulsations problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
3. The population problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
4. The pollution problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

**إن حسن استغلال ثرواتنا الطبيعية هو الطريق الوحيد لتحقيق الاستقرار الاقتصادي.**

1. The good use to our natural resources is the only way to achieve economic stability.
2. The good use of our natural resources is the only way to achieve economic stability.
3. The good use of our nature resources is the only way to achieve economic stability.
4. The good use of our natural resources is the only way to achieve economy stability.

**هل نتجح الرياضة في تحقيق السلم العالمي وهذا ما فشلت في تحقيقه الحروب؟**

1. Can sport succeed for achieving world peace and this is what war failed to achieve?
2. Can sport succeed in achieving world peaceful and this is what war failed to achieve?
3. Can sport succeed in achieving world peace and this is what war success to achieve?
4. Can sport succeed in achieving world peace and this is what war failed to achieve?

**ننغى أن نشجع الشباب على ممارسة الرياضة لمساعدتهم على قضاء وقت فراغهم.**

1. We should discourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
2. We should not encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
3. We should encourage young people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.
4. We should encourage old people to practice sports to help them spend their free time.

**1. Today tourism has become a huge business. It is a good source of national income for countries on the Mediterranean coast. Hence, we have to attract more tourists to visit Egypt all year round by building more comfortable hotels and making all tourist facilities available.**

1. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للعمله الصعيه للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال اليوم وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه .
2. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه.
3. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل المشاريع الثقافيه المتاحه .
4. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهي مصدر جيد للدخل القومي للدول التي تقع في البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب بعض من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه .

**2. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, which means the ability of a group to work wee together, is something we cannot do without. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.**

- 1-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي و التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى كل المشاريع.
- 2-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل المجتمعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- 3-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي بدون التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- 4-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعي والذي يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هي الا شيء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

**3. Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees give us the best wood for paper grows very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.**

- 1- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو كثيرا والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه
- 2- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القديم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه
- 3- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصديره
- 4- كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التي تعطينا أفضل الاثاث تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه ؟

**4- Stress can be a friend or an enemy. It can warn you that you are under too much pressure and you should change your way of life. It can kill you, if you do not notice the warning signals.**

- 1- لا يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبي عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.
- 2- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبي عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التحذير.
- 3- يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبي عدو أو صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لاحظت إشارات التحذير
- 4- : يمكن أن يكون التوتر العصبي صديق فهو يمكن ان يحذرك بأنك تحت ضغط شديد وعليك أن تغير طريقة حياتك ويمكن أن يقتلك إذا لم تلاحظ إشارات التوتر

**5- Keeping to rules saves us troubles and avoid us punishment. If people break the rules, it makes life unpredictable. People can get hurt and there could be a complete lack of order.**

- 1- المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى متهمين وستعم الفوضى في كل مكان
- 2- المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو خالف الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى في كل مكان .
- 3- المحافظة على القوانين يجلب لنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى في كل مكان
- 4- المحافظة على القوانين يجنبنا المشاكل وينجينا من العقاب فلو اطاع الناس القانون لاصبحت حياتهم غير متوقعة فيمكن أن يؤذى أبرياء وستعم الفوضى في كل مكان



## Unit One

### What is an essay ?

- An essay is a group of paragraphs written about a single topic موضوع and a central main idea.
- It must have at least three paragraphs, but a five-paragraph essay is a common length for academic writing. كتابه اكاڊميه.
- Essays can be formal as well as informal. Formal essays are generally academic in nature and tackle serious topics. Informal essays are more personal and often have humorous elements. عاصر فكاھيه
- It is a type of writing that has organized paragraphs. You can put your opinion. .
- It is flexible مرن because you can use a narrative style or structured paragraphs.

### - What is the structure of the essay ? تركيب وبناء المقال

- An essay's structure should consist of a beginning (or introduction مقدمه), a middle (or body), and an end (or conclusion الخاتمه).

### The Introduction المقدمة

- This is the first paragraph of an essay. - It explains the topic with general ideas. افكار عامه
- It catches the reader's interest. يجذب انتباه القاريء - It gives the general topic of the essay.
- It gives background information معلومات اساسيه about the topic.
- The introduction paragraph includes a thesis statement الجملة الرئيسية and hook الجملة الجاذبه / the topic, thesis, and main ideas..
- The thesis statement should be restated يعيد صياغه in the conclusion. الخاتمه
- A strong introduction introduces the topic clearly.
- A strong introduction gives several sentences of information about the topic.
- To make an introductory paragraph interesting for the reader, you can include interesting facts احصائيات or statistics حقائق شيقه, a personal story or example and an interesting quotation. -اقتباس مثير

### -What makes an introduction weak: ضعيف

1. It doesn't give enough information about the topic or gives too much information about it.
2. It talks about too many different topics.
3. It does not state a clear thesis. لا تذكر فكره رئيسيه واضحه.

### - A thesis statement الجملة الرئيسية

- It is a sentence that states what will be explained in the essay.
- You share the thesis (claim) for the first time in an essay at the end of the introduction.
- It should be put in the introduction and the conclusion. الخاتمه
- It is the most general sentence in an essay. - It should have one sentence.
- It can be compared to a topic sentence, which gives the main idea of a paragraph.
- It sets limits تضع حدود للموضوع on the topic. - It is a road map خريطة الطريق for the whole essay. It shows what you have to say and the points you will use to support your ideas.
- A good thesis statement is short and simple.
- A good thesis statement is a declarative sentence جملة تصريحيه that contains no qualifiers. لا تحتوي علي اي وصف او قيد لغوي
- Qualifiers قيد لغوي are words like —maybe,|| —seems like,|| — possibly.|| They indicate يشير that you are afraid to make a judgment.

### Note

1. It should not be a sentence that only gives a fact about the topic..
2. It should not state two sides of an argument equally.

### How to connect the thesis statement and the essay

1. The paragraphs in the main body of an essay should always explain the thesis statement..
2. Each paragraph in the main body should discuss one part of the thesis.

### A hook الجملة الجاذبه للقاريء

- A hook is an opening a sentence that captures (grab) the reader's attention. انتباه القاريء. It

is the first component مكون of an essay introduction.

- To write a good hook, avoid overly broad statements العبارات الفضفاضة or long, dense sentences الجمل المكثفة; try to start with something clear, concise موجز and catchy جذاب that will spark your reader's curiosity فضول.

### The main body

### جسم الموضوع (الأساس)

1. These the paragraphs explain and support the thesis statement and come between the introduction and the conclusion.
2. There must be one or more paragraphs in the main body of an essay.
3. Body paragraphs are the middle paragraphs in the essay.
4. A body paragraph explains and supports your position/answer to the essay question. It includes the most important content محتوى of the essay.
5. An essay usually has at least three body paragraphs, and these will support your thesis.
6. Each body paragraph will begin with a topic sentence which introduces its topic.
11. Conclusive / transition statement الجملة الختامية

- This sentence concludes تختتم the paragraph

### The Conclusion

### الخاتمة

1. This is the last paragraph of an essay.
2. It summarizes (restates يعيد صياغة) the thesis and the supporting ideas of the essay (main points).
3. It is a brief review of the key points you made in the main body.
4. The conclusion is the final paragraph in an essay. It has three purposes::
  - It signals تشير الي the end of the essay.
  - It reminds the reader of your main points. You can do this in 2 ways:
  - Summarise your subtopics نقاط فرعية - Paraphrase your thesis.
  - It leaves the reader with your final thoughts on the topic.

### The Types of the essay:

#### 1. Narrative Essay (Telling a story)

#### المقال القصصي – الروائي

- The writer tells a story about a real-life experience. - It challenges يتحدى students to think and write about themselves.
- A narrative essay isn't strictly divided لا تقسم into introduction, body, and conclusion, but it should still begin by setting up يؤسس the narrative and finish by expressing the point of the story—what you learned from your experience
- Narration الحكاية means you're telling a story and there is usually a reason for the telling. - The plot الحبكة is the focus of the story تركيز.

#### 2. Descriptive Essay (Painting a picture) (المقال الوصفي (رسم صورة)

1. A descriptive essay paints a picture with words. .
2. A writer might describe a person, place, object, or even memory .
3. The descriptive essay strives يسعى to communicate a deeper meaning through the description. وصف
4. the writer should show, not tell, by the use of colorful words

#### 3. Expository Essay (Just the facts)

#### مقال سرد الحقائق

1. The expository essay is an informative piece of writing that presents a balanced analysis تحليل متوازن of a topic.
2. The writer explains a topic, with facts, statistics إحصائيات, and examples
3. Expository essays are based on facts and not personal feelings, -
- The introduction of an expository essay states your topic and provides some general background, the body presents the details, and the conclusion summarizes the information presented.

**4. Persuasive Essay (Convince me) )****المقال الإقناعي**

1. A persuasive essay is one in which you attempt (try) to get (persuade) the reader to agree with your point of view.
2. The goal of the persuasive essay is to convince يقنع the reader to accept the writer's point of view وجهة نظر or recommendation. توصيه
3. The writer must build a case using facts and logic, المنطق

**5. Textual analysis essay****مقال التحليل النصي**

- In a textual analysis essay, you don't just present information on a topic, but closely analyze يحلل a text to explain how it achieves certain effects.

**6. Research Essay****مقال بحثي**

- It revolves a research question that answer some specific question through a research of the relevant literature. مختص بالأدب

**The Five steps of the Writing Process**

1. Previewing المسبقه (Think and Decide) ):
  - Decide on a topic to write about.
  - Consider who will read your work.
  - Brainstorm افكار ideas about the subject.
2. Research (If needed) ):
3. Drafting (Write) ): مسوده
4. Revising (Make it better): اعاده Read what you wrote
5. Editing and Proofreading (Make it correct) )

**What should a good essay avoid?**

- A good essay should avoid slang اللغة العاميه, brevity الاختصار, dignified التفخيم style and personal touch.

**- A paragraph normally has three parts:**

1. A introduction sentence that links the topic to the previous paragraph.
2. A number of sentences that develop the topic
3. A sentence that links the topic to the next topic/ paragraph.

**Major Types of Paragraphs****1. Descriptive Paragraph**

- A descriptive paragraph is one that is describing a person, place, thing, animal, theme or idea to the reader.

**Sample Descriptive paragraph**

Watson and the Shark is a painting by John Singleton Copley. In the foreground مقدمه of the painting, one naked عاري man is being attacked by a huge gray shark in the cold and choppy seawater. One small overloaded ثقيل rowboat is near the naked man and the frightening shark. There are nine horrified men in this rowboat. They are trying to rescue the naked man. One young man takes a long spear and wants to kill the shark. Some people are reaching for his hand, and some are throwing a rope for him to catch. In the background of the painting, under the dark and cloudy sky, there are many ships stopping in the stormy harbor. The whole painting makes people feel tension and fear.

**2. Narrative Paragraph**

- It helps tell the story and keeps the story moving.

**Sample Narrative Paragraph**

This past weekend I had the time of my life. First, Friday night, I had my best friend over and we made a delicious, mouth-watering pizza. After we ate, we had a friendly video game competition. On Saturday, my dad took us out on the boat. The weather was perfect and the water was warm. It was a great day to go for a swim. Later that night, we went to the movies. We saw an action packed thriller and ate a lot of popcorn. Finally, on Sunday,

we rode our bikes all over town. By the end of the day, my legs were very tired. I only hope that next weekend can be as fun as this one.

### 3. Persuasive Paragraph

- In it the writer is giving his own opinion on a certain subject or topic

#### Sample Persuasive Paragraph:

The best vacation is a trip to the beach. There is a lot to do at the beach. You can go swimming, build a sandcastle, or maybe even go surfing. The beach is very relaxing. Many people enjoy listening to the sound of the ocean and lying in the sun. When you plan your next vacation, be sure to remember that the beach is your best choice.

## Unit Three

### Signaling words / Transition words

كلمات الروابط

On the whole	على العموم
On one hand	من جهة
On the other hand	من جهة أخرى
On balance	أجمالاً / بشكل عام
On a bigger scale	على نطاق أكبر

### 2. Time/order:

الوقت - الترتيب

- at first, eventually, finally, first, firstly, in the end, in the first place, lastly, later, next, second, secondly, to begin with.

### 3. Contrast/opposite ideas:

التناقض

- but, despite, in spite of, even so, however, in contrast, in spite of this, nevertheless, on the contrary, on the other hand, still, whereas, yet

### 4. Comparison/similar ideas:

المقارنة والتشابه

- In comparison, in the same way, similarly

### 5. Condition:

الشرط

- in that case, then, if

### 6. Cause and effect:

السبب والنتيجة

- accordingly, as a result, because, consequently, for this reason, hence, in consequence, in order to, owing to this, since, so, therefore, thus.

### 7. Addition:

الإضافة

- apart from this, as well as, besides, furthermore, in addition, moreover, nor, not only ... but also, too, what is more.

### 8. Generalization:

التعميم

- as a rule, for the most part, generally, in general, normally, on the whole, in most cases,

### 9. Examples:

الأمثلة

- for example, for instance, such as, thus, as follows

### 10. Stating the obvious:

تحديد السابق

- after all, as one might expect, clearly, it goes without saying, naturally, obviously, of course

### 11. Attitude:

الرأي

- admittedly, certainly, fortunately, luckily, oddly enough, undoubtedly, unfortunately

### 12. Summary/conclusion:

تلخيص - النهاية

- finally, in brief, in conclusion, in short, overall, so, then, to conclude, to sum up

### 13. Explanation/equivalence:

التفسير

- in other words, namely, that is to say, this means, to be more precise, to put it another way

### 14. Support:

الدعم

- actually, as a matter of fact, in fact, indeed

### 15. Emphasis:

التأكيد

- chiefly, especially, in detail, in particular

**Exercise Paragraph Writing**

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**1. What is the first sentence of a paragraph called?**

- a. The introduction sentence
- b. The topic sentence
- c. The closing sentence
- d. The supporting sentence

**2. What is a paragraph?**

- a. A series of sentences that talk about various subjects.
- b. Made up of only one sentence.
- c. A series of sentences that talk about a specific subject.
- d. A series of paragraphs about one main idea or point

**3. When do you use supporting details or supporting sentences?**

- a. Never use these in paragraphs because they are for essays only.
- b. Before the first sentence at the introduction.
- c. After the topic sentence and before the closing sentence.
- d. After the last sentence because it helps you summarize the paragraph.

**4. How many topics should a paragraph cover?**

- a. One
- b. Two
- c. Three
- d. Five

**5. Which paragraph tells a story?**

- a. Descriptive paragraph.
- b. Persuasive paragraph.
- c. Expository paragraph.
- d. Narrative paragraph.

**6. How should the topic sentence of a paragraph be?**

- a. As broad and general as possible.
- b. Always about science.
- c. Broad enough to explicate the topic.
- d. Something the writer is interested in.

**7. A transition is .....**

- a. signal words that help organize a paragraph, using time order or listing order.
- b. a series of sentences about one main idea, or point.
- c. the sentences that express the main point, or idea, of a paragraph.
- d. reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.

**8. A topic sentence is.....**

- a. reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.
- b. a sentence with signal words that increase effectiveness of organization.
- c. a way to conclude the paragraph so the reader knows what the paragraph was about.
- d. the sentence that expresses the main point, or idea, of a paragraph

**9. A supporting detail sentence is.....**

- a. a series of paragraphs about one main idea, or point.
- b. signal words that help organize a paragraph, using time order or listing order.
- c. reasons, examples, and other details that support the main point of the paragraph.
- d. a way to conclude the paragraph so the reader knows what the paragraph was about.

**10. Choose the best topic sentence:**

.....On the contrary of some species of dogs, they do not need a lot of exercise every day. Crowds and loud noises do not make them nervous. They do not mind being alone for hours. Above all this, they are known to be patient and loving with children. If you are a city-dweller, I recommend this breed of dog.

- a. Bulldogs are a good choice of dog for people who live in cities.
- b. Every family should have a dog.
- c. Not all dogs are happy living in the city.
- d. All species of dogs are pretty much alike - they're all the same.

**11. Read the following paragraph, then choose the correct topic sentence.**

Malaysians spend more than \$50 million a year to buy imported fruits. Much of this money can be kept in the country if Malaysians consume more local fruits of which there are more than twenty varieties. Except for durians, mangoes and rambutans, Malaysians generally like imported fruits.

- a. Malaysians spend more than \$50 million a year to buy imported fruits.
- b. Much of this money can be kept in the country if Malaysians consume more local fruits of which there are more than twenty varieties.





- a. A space                      b. An indent                      c. You don't separate paragraphs.  
d. There is only supposed to be one paragraph.

**24 The introductory paragraph has three parts. Which of the following is NOT part of the introductory paragraph?**

- a. thesis      b. direct quote      c. background      d. hook

**25 What is the main idea of an essay called?**

- a. citation      b. topic sentence      c. introduction      d. thesis

**26 What are the parts of a paragraph?**

- a. topic sentence, background sentences, thesis                      b. hook, background sentences, thesis  
c. topic sentence, supporting sentences, closing sentence  
d. hook, background sentences, closing sentence

**27 To is to rewrite another writer's words and ideas into your own words.**

- a. paraphrase      b. summarise      c. include      d. conclude

**28 When you think that the words of the other writer are too difficult, you.....them.**

- a. paraphrase      b. summarise      c. include      d. conclude

**29 How would you plan to link the paragraphs to each other in an essay writing?"**

- a. I write a lot of ideas in each paragraph.  
b. By making sure that each paragraph links to the introduction.  
c. By stating different key points in each paragraph  
d. By making sure that each paragraph links to the conclusion.

**30 What is the most effective way of trying to use the linking words in essay writing?**

- a. Overusing transition words and expressions that are simple  
b. Using transition words and expressions between each sentence.  
c. Learning only a few linking words and phrases to use.  
d. Learning a lot of transition words and phrases to use.

**31 Which one of these points do you include in an introduction?**

- a. Introduce topic areas in one or two sentences.  
b. Final results.                      c. Evidence.                      d. Moral

**32 Which one of these points is included in the body of an essay?**

- a. Final results.                      b. Summary of the topic                      c. Thesis statement  
d. A topic sentence in each paragraph that states the main idea

**33 What does a conclusion include?**

- a. Summarizing your major points                      b. Describing the topic  
c. The positive and the negative points                      d. The descriptive points

**34 What do you need to include in a conclusion?**

- a. Introduce new details                      b. New ideas                      c. The thesis statement  
d. Restating the thesis statement

**35 The first sentence of your introductory paragraph is called the**

- a. concrete detail                      b. thesis                      c. conclusion                      d. attention grabber (hook)

**36 You should include..... throughout your essay**

- a. transition words                      b. paragraphs                      c. theses      d. closings

**37 The first sentence of the conclusion paragraph should.....**

- a. include a quote                      b. grab your readers attention  
c. restate your thesis                      d. summarize your body paragraphs

**38 Your attention grabber (hook) should**

- a. state your thesis                      b. make your reader become involved in the essay  
c. summarize what you will be writing about                      d. warn your reader from the essay

**39 Thesis statements represent the main idea of the.....**

- a. first paragraph                      b. body                      c. conclusion      d. essay

**40 A useful technique for persuasive writing is.....**

- a. element of surprise                      b. poor writing                      c. creativity                      d. emotional appeals

**41 A .....is some sort of a story.**

- a. Descriptive                      b. Expository                      c. Narrative                      d. persuasive

**42. ....writing is intended to influence others**

- a. descriptive      b. expository      c. Narrative      d. persuasive

**43. The purpose of a ..... essay is to use vivid details to give the reader a mental image of a person, place, thing, event, or idea.**

- a. descriptive      b. expository      c. Narrative      d. persuasive

**44. Which of these is not a characteristic of a good essay?**

- a. Formal style      b. Brevity      c. Personal touch      d. Fakeness

**45. Which of these should be avoided in a good essay?**

- a. Formal words      b. Slang      c. Unity      d. Brevity

**46. Which of these is not a type of essay?**

- a. Personal essay      b. Narrative essay  
c. Descriptive essay      d. Argumentative essay

**47. Which of these essays tells a story?**

- a. Argumentative essays      b. Descriptive essays  
d. Narrative essays      d. Reflective essays

**48. .... must be avoided in a summary.**

- a. Facts      b. Ideas      c. Repetitions      d. Verbs

**49. It is recommended that you write the ..... paragraph last.**

- a. introduction      b. thesis      c. body      d. conclusion

**50. What is the first thing you should do when needing to write an essay?**

- a. A promise.      b. Choose a topic.      c. A decision.      d. No mistakes.

**51. You should first write the ..... of your essay.**

- a. moral      b. sentence      c. body      d. conclusion

**52. An essay is .....**

- a. a type of writing that has too many paragraphs      b. a song with a story  
c. a poem that has many stanzas      d. a type of writing that requires research

**53. The introductory paragraph of an essay requires .....**

- a. The topic, thesis, and main idea      b. The supporting details  
c. The reason for the essay, the topic, and thesis      d. a and b

**54. After you write the main idea of paragraphs, .....**

- a. include the thesis to remind the reader.  
b. make sure the supporting details are shown through the main idea  
c. use opinion to show why your thesis is right.  
d. include supporting details with examples and specific details.

**5. The conclusion of an essay should .....**

- a. include last minute ideas and thoughts for the future.  
b. have a restatement of the thesis and thoughts for the future  
c. be a recap of the whole essay      d. be only two sentences